One of the most time-consuming tasks in clinical medicine is seeking the opinion of specialist colleagues. There is a pressure not only to make referrals appropriate, but also to summarize the case in the language of the specialist. *Cardiology Explained* is an essential tool in this task. It explains the basic physiology and pathophysiologic mechanisms of cardiovascular disease in a straightforward and diagrammatic manner, gives guidelines as to when referral is appropriate, and, uniquely, explains what the specialist is likely to do. This facilitates an understanding of the specialty not available from standard textbooks. With wide appeal, this book is ideal for any hospital doctor, generalist, or even senior medical student who may need a cardiology opinion; or for that matter, anyone who simply wants some of cardiology – explained.

**Contents**

Cardiac arrest • Cardiovascular examination • Conquering the ECG • Understanding the echocardiogram • Coronary artery disease • Hypertension • Heart failure • Arrhythmia • Valve disease • Infective endocarditis • Cardiomyopathy • Aneurysm and dissection of the aorta • Pericardial disease • Adult congenital heart disease

“Cardiology Explained is for the generalist who wants a no-nonsense, jargon-explaining, up-to-date overview of the latest developments in cardiology. It is not intimidating and is well-illustrated with clear diagrams and clinical data. The 14 chapters cover the whole range of modern cardiology in a thoroughly satisfactory manner.”

Professor Peter Sleight
Emeritus Professor of Cardiovascular Medicine,
University of Oxford, UK
Cardiology explained
Cardiology explained

Euan A Ashley and Josef Niebauer

Euan A Ashley
Division of Cardiovascular Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Falk CVRC, 300 Pasteur Drive
Palo Alto, California 94305
USA

Josef Niebauer
Privatdozent and Consultant Cardiologist
Department of Internal Medicine and Cardiology
University of Leipzig – Heart Center
Strümpellstr. 39
04289 Leipzig
Germany
Cardiology is a rapidly changing field. New technologies such as drug-eluting stents, left ventricular assist devices, and novel inflammatory markers, and imaging modalities such as magnetic resonance imaging and three-dimensional echocardiography, offer us an unprecedented view of the function of the heart in health and an unparalleled scope of therapies with which to treat disease. Yet, although we cardiologists like to think that we are more innovative and pioneering than our colleagues in other specialties, it seems at least possible that there are equally exciting changes in other fields, too. All of this leaves the generalist as the patient’s primary advocate, as the integrator of all these specialist opinions, trying at once to learn enough of the new advances to communicate with both patient and specialist, but not so much as to lose the big picture in amongst the details.

What the generalist needs is a concise, well written, beautifully illustrated guide to cardiology. And fortunately, if you’re reading this, you’ve already found it! The authors have recognized that generalists need help in staying up-to-date with specialist advances in a way that journals can rarely provide: a comprehensive, yet highly digestible update to cardiology that can jog the memory in a tactful but not patronizing way. Further, it is organized not in the didactic way in which many such textbooks are written, but in a way that will make sense to the practicing clinician who needs the facts quickly to hand. Clear yet detailed explanations of what cardiologists do can be found within these pages. Specific guides to understanding cardiological tests and writing good referral letters are two of the unusual, yet extremely useful places where this book differs from others you might have read. All recommendations are, of course, consistent with the latest guidelines from the European Society of Cardiology, the American Heart Association, and the American College of Cardiology. Meanwhile, the historical nuggets remind us from where we have come and just how lucky we are to make it this far (intact!). Together, these things serve to make this book a unique and invaluable resource for generalists and other subspecialists, both in hospital and in the community. I highly commend you for picking it up!

Alan Yeung
Professor of Medicine (Cardiovascular),
Stanford University Medical Center, USA
We may not be the most impartial commentators, but it seems to us that the heart is the most interesting organ in the body. It beats in a tightly regulated, finely coordinated, gracefully rhythmic fashion to distribute blood and oxygen to all the other organs. It does this more than 2 billion times in the lifetime of an average human. It can accelerate to power an Olympic athlete for 26 miles in a little over 2 hours, and it can weaken to hold your 86-year-old patient hostage in her favorite chair.

Yet the heart, so central to the metaphors of our language, has not revealed its secrets readily. This may be because until relatively recently, it was believed the heart was the only organ that could not be cut (heart surgery was unthinkable from the time of Aristotle until the late 1800s). But this reflects the heart’s eternal mystique. Since the invention of the stethoscope we have used technology to reveal the innermost workings of the heart. In recent times, technological advance has been ever more rapid. Indeed, the rapidity of this technological advance is what led us to writing this book. Meanwhile, the bulk of cardiovascular disease remains the realm of the generalists. From whose perspective, knowing when to make use of specialists and knowing how to view their input in the context of the whole patient is increasingly important, yet increasingly difficult. So this is the aim of our book: to sit beside you when you wonder, “Should I refer this patient to a cardiologist”; to look over your shoulder when you receive the cardiology clinic letter; to whisper in your ear the normal left ventricular internal diameter. In short, if our book can be your partner in working with your cardiologist then it has been successful. If it can answer questions the answers to which you once knew, it has been valuable. If it can explain the answers to questions you didn’t know you wanted to ask, then it has been worth our while and worth your money. We care deeply that this book fulfils your needs and welcome any feedback on its content, explanatory style, or level of detail.

Many people have made this book possible. Too many to mention in these pages. We would like to thank our wives Fiona and Dörte who have been patient and understanding during the long nights and early mornings. Many cardiologists and generalists gave advice and read chapters and we would like to thank them all here. Finally, we’d like to thank Cath Harris, Andrew Ward, and all the team at Remedica who coaxed and cajoled us, encouraged and enlivened our text, and heroically rescued our diagrams from obscurity.

Euan A Ashley and Josef Niebauer
To Angus Ashley, the best doctor I know

EAA
“To study disease without books is to sail an uncharted sea, while to study books without patients is not to go to sea at all.”
William Osler, 1901

“As a cardiologist, I may panic when I see somebody bleed from his nose, but not when I see a heart fibrillate. This is my territory.”
Lofty L Basta, 1996
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 1</td>
<td>Cardiac arrest</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 2</td>
<td>Cardiovascular examination</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 3</td>
<td>Conquering the ECG</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 4</td>
<td>Understanding the echocardiogram</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 5</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 6</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 7</td>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 8</td>
<td>Arrhythmia</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 9</td>
<td>Valve disease</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 10</td>
<td>Infective endocarditis</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 11</td>
<td>Cardiomyopathy</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 12</td>
<td>Aneurysm and dissection of the aorta</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 13</td>
<td>Pericardial disease</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 14</td>
<td>Adult congenital heart disease</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1
Cardiac arrest

Adult basic life-support algorithm

1. Check responsiveness
   - Shake and shout

2. Open airway
   - Head tilt/chin lift

3. Check breathing
   - Look, listen, and feel

4. Breathe
   - Two effective breaths

5. Assess
   - Signs of a circulation
   - 10 seconds only

6. Circulation present
   - Continue rescue breathing
   - Check circulation every minute

7. No circulation
   - Compress chest
   - 100 per minute
   - 15:2 ratio

Send or go for help as soon as possible according to guidelines
Advanced life-support algorithm for the management of cardiac arrest in adults (US version)

ACS: acute coronary syndromes; CPR: cardiopulmonary resuscitation; IV: intravenous; OD: overdose; VF: ventricular fibrillation; VT: ventricular tachycardia.
Advanced life-support algorithm for the management of cardiac arrest in adults (UK version)

Cardiac arrest

Precordial thump if appropriate

Basic life-support algorithm if appropriate

Attach defibrillator/monitor

Assess rhythm

Check pulse +/-

During CPR
- Correct reversible causes
  - If not already
- Check electrodes, paddle positions, and contact
- Attempt/verify airway and O₂ IV access
- Give epinephrine every 3 minutes
- Consider:
  - amiodarone
  - atropine/pacing
  - buffers

CPR: cardiopulmonary resuscitation; IV: intravenous; VF: ventricular fibrillation; VT: ventricular tachycardia.
The adult basic life-support algorithm (UK version) is reprinted with permission from the Resuscitation Council (UK) website and is available at: www.resus.org.uk

The advanced life-support algorithm for the management of cardiac arrest in adults (US version) is reprinted with permission from the American Heart Association (Circulation, 2000;102;I-143).

The advanced life-support algorithm for the management of cardiac arrest in adults (UK version) is reprinted with permission from the Resuscitation Council (UK) website and is available at: www.resus.org.uk
Although technology has a high profile in cardiology, clinical examination remains a central tool, especially for the generalist.

**General inspection**

Many clues to the cardiac condition can be detected with a simple visual inspection. In the acutely unwell patient, cyanosis, pallor, and sweatiness can all be signs of impending danger – does the patient “look” ill? In nonacute patients, cachexia is perhaps the most important feature to note on general inspection since it is an important prognostic sign in heart failure. Palpation is essential to confirm that girth is excess fluid (pitting edema). Certain physical appearances should always prompt an awareness of cardiac abnormalities (see Table 1). Facial signs for which there is evidence of an association with cardiac conditions are shown in Table 2. Finally, it is important to document the condition of a potential cardiac patient’s teeth.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genetic disorder</th>
<th>Associated cardiac manifestation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marfan’s syndrome</td>
<td>Aortic regurgitation (aortic dissection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Down’s syndrome</td>
<td>ASD, VSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turner’s syndrome</td>
<td>Coarctation of the aorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spondyloarthritides, eg, ankylosing spondylitis</td>
<td>Aortic regurgitation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 1.* Cardiac manifestations of genetic disorders. ASD: atrial septal defect; VSD: ventricular septal defect.

**Taking the pulse**

Taking the pulse is one of the simplest, oldest, and yet most informative of all clinical tests. As you pick up the patient’s hand, you should check for clubbing and any peripheral signs of endocarditis (see Table 3). Note the rate and document the rhythm of the pulse. The character and volume of the pulse can also be useful signs and traditionally it is believed that these are easier to detect in larger arteries such as the brachial and the carotid (see Table 4).
Checking both radials simultaneously is important in all cases of chest pain as a gross screening test for aortic dissection. Adding radiofemoral delay (or radiofemoral difference in volume) may alert you to coarctation as a rare cause of hypertension.

Peripheral pulses should also be documented, as peripheral vascular disease is an important predictor of coronary artery disease:

• femoral – feel at the midinguinal point (midway between the symphysis pubis and the anterior superior iliac spine, just inferior to the inguinal ligament)
• popliteal – feel deep in the center of the popliteal fossa with the patient lying on their back with their knees bent
• posterior tibial – feel behind the medial malleolus
• dorsalis pedis – feel over the second metatarsal bone just lateral to the extensor hallucis tendon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Facial sign</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible cardiac association</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Malar flush</td>
<td>Redness around the cheeks</td>
<td>Mitral stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthomata</td>
<td>Yellowish deposits of lipid around the eyes, palms, or tendons</td>
<td>Hyperlipidemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corneal arcus</td>
<td>A ring around the cornea</td>
<td>Age, hyperlipidemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proptosis</td>
<td>Forward projection or displacement of the eyeball; occurs in patients with Graves’ disease</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Facial signs associated with cardiac conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Peripheral sign</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Cardiac association</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clubbing</td>
<td>Broadening or thickening of the tips of the fingers (and toes) with increased lengthwise curvature of the nail and a decrease in the angle normally seen between the cuticle and the fingernail</td>
<td>Infective endocarditis, cyanotic congenital heart disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splinter hemorrhages</td>
<td>Streak hemorrhages in nailbeds</td>
<td>Infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janeway lesions</td>
<td>Macules on the back of the hand</td>
<td>Infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osler’s nodes</td>
<td>Tender nodules in fingertips</td>
<td>Infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. Peripheral signs associated with infective endocarditis.
**Blood pressure**

This is described in Chapter 6, Hypertension.

**Jugular venous pressure**

Of all the elements of clinical examination, the jugular venous pressure (JVP) is the most mysterious. It is highly esoteric, and whilst some people wax lyrical about the steepness of the “y” descent, others will feel grateful to be convinced they see it at all. Two things are very clear: (1) the JVP is a very useful clinical marker in many situations, and (2) the exact height of the JVP is a poor guide to central venous pressure. Taken together, this suggests that noting whether the JVP is “up” or “down” is good practice in every cardiac patient. In particular, it can be very useful in diagnosing right-sided heart failure and in differentiating a cardiovascular cause of acute shortness of breath (right ventricular failure, pulmonary embolism) from an intrinsic pulmonary cause (asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease). For the general physician, the waveform of the JVP (see Figure 1) is, for most purposes, only of academic significance.

### Table 4. Abnormal pulses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of pulse</th>
<th>Pulse characteristics</th>
<th>Most likely cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regularly irregular</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>2nd-degree heart block, ventricular bigeminy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregularly irregular</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation, frequent ventricular ectopies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow rising</td>
<td>Low gradient upstroke</td>
<td>Aortic stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterhammer, collapsing</td>
<td>Steep up and down stroke (lift arm so that wrist is above heart height)</td>
<td>Aortic regurgitation, patent ductus arteriosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisferiens</td>
<td>A double-peaked pulse – the second peak can be smaller, larger, or the same size as the first</td>
<td>Aortic regurgitation, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulsus paradoxus</td>
<td>An exaggerated fall in pulse volume on inspiration (&gt;10 mm Hg on sphygmomanometry)</td>
<td>Cardiac tamponade, acute asthma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounding</td>
<td>Large volume</td>
<td>Anemia, hepatic failure, type 2 respiratory failure (high CO₂)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulsus alternans</td>
<td>Alternating large and small volume pulses</td>
<td>Bigeminy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cardiovascular examination
The JVP should be assessed with the patient reclined at a 45° angle (see Figure 2). Accepted practice is that only the internal jugular vein should be used, as only this vessel joins the superior vena cava at a 180° angle. The JVP is defined as the height of the waveform in centimeters above the sternal angle (<4 cm is normal). Abnormalities of the JVP are described in Table 5.
JVP abnormalities | Probable cause
--- | ---
Large “a” wave | Tricuspid stenosis, pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary stenosis
Cannon wave | Atrial fibrillation, complete heart block, VVI pacing, ventricular tachycardia (a cannon wave occurs when the right atrium contracts against a closed tricuspid valve)
Steep “x”, “y” descent | Constrictive pericarditis, cardiac tamponade
Large “v” wave, “cv” wave | Tricuspid regurgitation
Kussmaul’s sign | Rise of JVP on inspiration, constrictive pericarditis, cardiac tamponade

Table 5. Abnormalities of the jugular venous pressure (JVP).

Palpation

Before auscultation, inspection of the precordium can be a useful indicator of previous surgery – eg, midline sternotomy suggests previous bypass, lateral thoracotomy suggests previous mitral valve or minimally invasive bypass surgery (left internal mammary artery to left anterior descending coronary artery). Locate the apex beat – the furthest point laterally and inferiorly where you can clearly feel the apex (usually the fifth intercostal space in the midclavicular line). There are many different descriptions for abnormal apex beats. One scheme distinguishes heaving (high afterload, eg, aortic stenosis) from thrusting (high preload,
eg, aortic regurgitation). The apex may also be “tapping”, but this reflects a loud first heart sound. In addition, you should place your left hand over the sternum and feel for any significant ventricular heave (right ventricular hypertrophy) or thrill (tight aortic stenosis, ventricular septal defect).

**Auscultation**

Held by many as the key to physical examination, the importance of auscultation remains, but is diminished in an age of increasingly portable echocardiography.

Listen over the aortic (second right intercostal space) and pulmonary (second left intercostal space) areas and at the left lower sternal edge with the diaphragm of your stethoscope (better for higher pitches), then use the bell for the apex (better for lower pitches). If in doubt, use both. Press lightly with the bell. If you hear an abnormality over the aortic or pulmonary areas, you should listen over the carotids. If you hear an abnormality at the apex, listen in the axilla. Listen systematically. Start with the heart sounds – ignore everything else.

**Heart sound variations**

When listening to heart sounds, note their volume (normal, diminished, loud) and whether physiological splitting is present (see Figure 3).

Physiological splitting of the second heart sound is when the sound of aortic valve closure (A2) occurs earlier than that of pulmonary valve closure (P2). It occurs in inspiration and is more common in the young. It is caused by increased venous return and negative intrathoracic pressure. This delays right ventricular emptying and pulmonary valve closure, at the same time that pooling of blood in the pulmonary capillary bed hastens left ventricular emptying and aortic valve closure. Reverse splitting of the second heart sound can occur in conditions where aortic valve closure is delayed, such as left bundle branch block or paced right ventricle, or where pulmonary valve closure occurs early, such as in the B form of Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome. Wide fixed splitting of the second heart sound occurs in atrial septal defect.

A third heart sound may be heard soon after the second heart sound. It is thought to be due to rapid, high-volume filling of the left ventricle. As such, it is found in pathological (left ventricular failure) as well as physiological (athletic heart, pregnancy) states.

A fourth heart sound may be heard just before the first sound. This is caused by atrial contraction filling a stiff left ventricle, eg, hypertensive heart or diastolic heart failure.
Murmurs
When you have considered these heart sound variations, move on to consider the gaps between the heart sounds. If you hear a murmur, first establish whether it occurs in systole or diastole (time against the carotid pulse if necessary). Then determine its length and, if short, its exact position (early, mid, or late; systole or diastole) (see Figure 3).

Added sounds
An opening snap occurring after the second heart sound represents a diseased mitral valve opening to a stenotic position. An ejection click soon after the first heart sound occurs in aortic stenosis and pulmonary stenosis. A mid systolic click is heard in mitral valve prolapse.

After listening to the heart
Listen to the base of the lungs for the fine inspiratory crackles of pulmonary edema. If you suspect right-sided cardiac pathology, palpate the liver, which will be enlarged, congested, and possibly pulsatile in cases of right ventricular failure or tricuspid valve disease. Also, check the patient’s ankles for swelling.

Table 6 outlines common associations in cardiovascular clinical examination.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>AS</th>
<th>Aortic sclerosis/ minimal AS</th>
<th>Aortic regurgitation</th>
<th>Mitral stenosis</th>
<th>Mitral regurgitation</th>
<th>Tricuspid regurgitation</th>
<th>Pulmonary regurgitation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse</strong></td>
<td>Low volume, slow rising</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>↑ volume, collapsing</td>
<td>Low volume, normal/AF</td>
<td>Normal/AF</td>
<td>Normal/AF</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse pressure</strong></td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>JVP</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>↑, prominent systolic wave (&quot;cv&quot; wave)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apex</strong></td>
<td>Heaving, not displaced</td>
<td>Just palpable, not displaced</td>
<td>Thrusting, displaced</td>
<td>Tapping, not displaced</td>
<td>Thrusting, displaced</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>First sound</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Loud</td>
<td>Soft</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second sound</strong></td>
<td>Soft A2</td>
<td>A2 not soft</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Added sounds</strong></td>
<td>Ejection click can occur with bicuspid valve</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>No third sound opening snap</td>
<td>Third sound</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Murmur</strong></td>
<td>Loud, harsh, mid-systolic ejection</td>
<td>Ejection systolic neither harsh nor loud</td>
<td>Blowing, high-pitched early diastolic</td>
<td>Low, rumbling, mid-diastolic</td>
<td>Pansystolic</td>
<td>Pansystolic</td>
<td>Early diastolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heard best</strong></td>
<td>Second right ICS</td>
<td>Second right ICS</td>
<td>LLSE (patient forward in expiration)</td>
<td>Apex with patient turned to left</td>
<td>Apex</td>
<td>LLSE in inspiration</td>
<td>Second left ICS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radiates</strong></td>
<td>Into carotids</td>
<td>Faintly to carotids</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>To axilla</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6. Common associations in cardiovascular clinical examination. AF: atrial fibrillation; AS: aortic stenosis; ASD: atrial septal defect; ICS: intercostal space; JVP: jugular venous pressure; LLSE: left lower sternal edge; PDA: patent ductus arteriosus; PR: pulmonary regurgitation; VSD: ventricular septal defect. See Chapter 9, Valve disease, for more on columns 1–9 and Chapter 14, Adult congenital heart disease, for columns 10–13.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Tricuspid stenosis</th>
<th>Pulmonary stenosis</th>
<th>ASD</th>
<th>VSD</th>
<th>PDA</th>
<th>Pulmonary hypertension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse</strong></td>
<td>Usually low volume, AF</td>
<td>Low volume</td>
<td>Normal/AF</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Regular, collapsing</td>
<td>Low volume, AF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse pressure</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>JVP</strong></td>
<td>Prominent “a” wave (if sinus rhythm)</td>
<td>Large “a” wave</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>↑ (tricuspid regurgitation) with prominent “a” wave (if sinus rhythm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apex</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Just palpable, not displaced</td>
<td>May be displaced</td>
<td>Thrusting, displaced</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>First sound</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second sound</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Soft P2</td>
<td>Wide fixed splitting of S2</td>
<td>P2 may be loud</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Loud P2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Added sounds</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Murmur</strong></td>
<td>Rumbling mid-diastolic</td>
<td>Harsh mid-systolic ejection</td>
<td>Ejection systolic (↑ flow across pulmonary valve) ± harsh, explosive, brief early diastolic (PR) and ejection click</td>
<td>Pan-systolic ± early diastolic (PR)</td>
<td>Continuous machinery murmur with systolic accentuation</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heard best</strong></td>
<td>LLSE (louder on inspiration)</td>
<td>Second left ICS (louder on inspiration)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>LLSE ± second left ICS</td>
<td>5–7 cm above and left of 2nd left ICS beneath clavicle</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radiates</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Apex</td>
<td>Posteriorly</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6. Continued.
Summary

A careful clinical examination can reveal much about the condition of your patient’s heart. In addition, noting the findings of a full examination will greatly facilitate specialist referral. In an age of high technology, skilled clinical examination has yet to be surpassed in terms of convenience, safety, and value for money.

Further reading


Besides the stethoscope, the electrocardiogram (ECG) is the oldest and most enduring tool of the cardiologist. A basic knowledge of the ECG will enhance the understanding of cardiology (not to mention this book).

**Electrocardiography**

At every beat, the heart is depolarized to trigger its contraction. This electrical activity is transmitted throughout the body and can be picked up on the skin. This is the principle behind the ECG. An ECG machine records this activity via electrodes on the skin and displays it graphically. An ECG involves attaching 10 electrical cables to the body: one to each limb and six across the chest.

ECG terminology has two meanings for the word “lead”:

- the cable used to connect an electrode to the ECG recorder
- the electrical view of the heart obtained from any one combination of electrodes

### Carrying out an ECG

1. Ask the patient to undress down to the waist and lie down
2. Remove excess hair where necessary
3. Attach limb leads (anywhere on the limb)
4. Attach the chest leads (see Figure 1) as follows:
   - V1 and V2: either side of the sternum on the fourth rib (count down from the sternal angle, the second rib insertion)
   - V4: on the apex of the heart (feel for it)
   - V3: halfway between V2 and V4
   - V5 and V6: horizontally laterally from V4 (not up towards the axilla)
5. Ask the patient to relax
6. Press record
The standard ECG uses 10 cables to obtain 12 electrical views of the heart. The different views reflect the angles at which electrodes “look” at the heart and the direction of the heart’s electrical depolarization.

**Limb leads**

Three bipolar leads and three unipolar leads are obtained from three electrodes attached to the left arm, the right arm, and the left leg, respectively. (An electrode is also attached to the right leg, but this is an earth electrode.) The bipolar limb leads reflect the potential difference between two of the three limb electrodes:

- **lead I**: right arm–left arm
- **lead II**: right arm–left leg
- **lead III**: left leg–left arm

The unipolar leads reflect the potential difference between one of the three limb electrodes and an estimate of zero potential – derived from the remaining two limb electrodes. These leads are known as augmented leads. The augmented leads and their respective limb electrodes are:

- **aVR lead**: right arm
- **aVL lead**: left arm
- **aVF lead**: left leg
Chest leads
Another six electrodes, placed in standard positions on the chest wall, give rise to a further six unipolar leads – the chest leads (also known as precordial leads), V1–V6. The potential difference of a chest lead is recorded between the relevant chest electrode and an estimate of zero potential – derived from the average potential recorded from the three limb leads.

Planes of view
The limb leads look at the heart in a vertical plane (see Figure 2), whereas the chest leads look at the heart in a horizontal plane. In this way, a three-dimensional electrical picture of the heart is built up (see Table 1).
Depolarization of the heart

The route that the depolarization wave takes across the heart is outlined in Figure 3. The sinoatrial node (SAN) is the heart’s pacemaker. From the SAN, the wave of depolarization spreads across the atria to the atrioventricular node (AVN). The impulse is delayed briefly at the AVN and atrial contraction is completed.

The wave of depolarization then proceeds rapidly to the bundle of His where it splits into two pathways and travels along the right and left bundle branches. The impulse travels the length of the bundles along the interventricular septum to the base of the heart, where the bundles divide into the Purkinje system. From here, the wave of depolarization is distributed to the ventricular walls and initiates ventricular contraction.

PERFORMING DOGS

British physiologist Augustus D Waller of St Mary’s Medical School, London, published the first human electrocardiogram in the British Medical Journal in 1888. It was recorded from Thomas Goswell, a technician in the laboratory, using a capillary electrometer. After that, Waller used a more available subject for his demonstrations – his dog Jimmy, who would patiently stand with his paws in glass jars of saline.
The ECG trace

The ECG machine processes the signals picked up from the skin by electrodes and produces a graphic representation of the electrical activity of the patient’s heart. The basic pattern of the ECG is logical:

- electrical activity towards a lead causes an upward deflection
- electrical activity away from a lead causes a downward deflection
- depolarization and repolarization deflections occur in opposite directions

The basic pattern of this electrical activity was first discovered over a hundred years ago. It comprises three waves, which have been named P, QRS (a wave complex), and T (see Figure 4).

P wave
The P wave is a small deflection wave that represents atrial depolarization.

PR interval
The PR interval is the time between the first deflection of the P wave and the first deflection of the QRS complex.
QRS wave complex

The three waves of the QRS complex represent ventricular depolarization. For the inexperienced, one of the most confusing aspects of ECG reading is the labeling of these waves. The rule is: if the wave immediately after the P wave is an upward deflection, it is an R wave; if it is a downward deflection, it is a Q wave:

- small Q waves correspond to depolarization of the interventricular septum. Q waves can also relate to breathing and are generally small and thin. They can also signal an old myocardial infarction (in which case they are big and wide)
- the R wave reflects depolarization of the main mass of the ventricles – hence it is the largest wave
- the S wave signifies the final depolarization of the ventricles, at the base of the heart
Figure 6. Example of a normal ECG.

**ST segment**
The ST segment, which is also known as the ST interval, is the time between the end of the QRS complex and the start of the T wave. It reflects the period of zero potential between ventricular depolarization and repolarization.

**T wave**
T waves represent ventricular repolarization (atrial repolarization is obscured by the large QRS complex).

**Wave direction and size**
Since the direction of a deflection, upward or downward, is dependent on whether the electrical activity is going towards or away from a lead, it differs according to the orientation of the lead with respect to the heart (see Figure 5).

The ECG trace reflects the net electrical activity at a given moment. Consequently, activity in one direction is masked if there is more activity, eg, by a larger mass, in the other direction. For example, the left ventricle muscle mass is much greater than the right, and therefore its depolarization accounts for the direction of the biggest wave.

**Interpreting the ECG**
A normal ECG tracing is provided in Figure 6. The only way to become confident at reading ECGs is to practice. It is important to be methodical – every ECG reading should start with an assessment of the rate, rhythm, and axis. This approach always reveals something about an ECG, regardless of how unusual it is.
Rate
Identify the QRS complex (this is generally the biggest wave); count the number of large squares between one QRS wave and the next; divide 300 by this number to determine the rate (see Table 2).

Rhythm
P waves are the key to determining whether a patient is in sinus rhythm or not. If P waves are not clearly visible in the chest leads, look for them in the other leads. The presence of P waves immediately before every QRS complex indicates sinus rhythm. If there are no P waves, note whether the QRS complexes are wide or narrow, regular or irregular.

No P waves and irregular narrow QRS complexes
This is the hallmark of atrial fibrillation (see Figure 7). Sometimes the baseline appears “noisy” and sometimes it appears entirely flat. However, if there are no P waves and the QRS complexes appear at randomly irregular intervals, the diagnosis is atrial fibrillation.

Sawtooth P waves
A sawtooth waveform signifies atrial flutter (see Figure 8). The number of atrial contractions to one ventricular contraction should be specified.

Axis
The axis is the net direction of electrical activity during depolarization. It is altered by left ventricular or right ventricular hypertrophy or by bundle branch blocks. It is a very straightforward measurement that, once it has been grasped, can be calculated instantaneously:

- find the QRS complex in the I and aVF leads (because these look at the heart at 0° and +90°, respectively)
- determine the net positivity of the QRS wave from each of the two leads by subtracting the S wave height (the number of small squares that it crosses
as it dips below the baseline – if it does) from the R wave height (the number of small squares that it crosses as it rises) (see Figure 9a and 9b)

- plot out the net sizes of these QRS waves against each other on a vector diagram (see Figure 9c). For the I lead, plot net positives to the right and net negatives to the left; for the aVF lead, plot positive downwards and negative upwards

- the direction of the endpoint from the starting point represents the axis or predominant direction of electrical depolarization (determined primarily by the muscle mass of the left ventricle). It is expressed as an angle and can be estimated quite easily (normal is 0°–120°)
ECG abnormalities

This section discusses the most important and most frequently encountered ECG abnormalities.

Normal variations

- Small Q waves and inverted T waves in lead III often disappear on deep inspiration. Occasional septal Q waves can be seen in other leads.
- ST elevation following an S wave (“high take off”) is common in leads V2–V4 and is quite normal. Differentiating this from pathological ST elevation can be difficult and relies on the patient’s history and the availability of a previous ECG. These “repolarization abnormalities” are more common in the young and in athletes.
- T-wave inversion is common in Afro-Caribbean blacks.
- U waves – small extra waves following T waves – are seen in hypokalemic patients, but can also represent a normal variant.
- Ventricular extrasystoles – no P waves, broad and abnormal QRS complexes, and T waves interspersed between normal sinus rhythm – sometimes occur and do not require further investigation unless they are associated with symptoms (such as dizziness, palpitations, exercise intolerance, chest pain, shortness of breath) or occur several times every minute.

Pathological variations

Long PR interval

A distance of more than five small squares from the start of the P wave to the start of the R wave (or Q wave if there is one) constitutes first-degree heart block (see Figure 10). It rarely requires action, but in the presence of other abnormalities might be a sign of hyperkalemia, digoxin toxicity, or cardiomyopathy.
There is some debate over exactly who invented the electrocardiogram. The Dutch “K” (elektrokardiogram) is often used as a tribute to the Indonesian-born physician Wilhelm Einthoven who, while working in The Netherlands in 1924, received the Nobel prize for “the discovery of the mechanism of the electrocardiogram”. In fact, it was Augustus Désiré Waller, a physician trained in Edinburgh, who presented – to the students of St Mary’s Hospital medical school, London, at the introductory lecture of the 1888 academic year – his “cardiograph”, the first ever ECG recording in man. It was some years later, in 1901, that Wilhelm Einthoven reported his string galvanometer – with the limb leads labeled I, II, and III and the waves labeled P, QRS, and T as we know them today. In fact, although often credited with inventing the term electrocardiogram (which is why it is sometimes spelt the Dutch way), Einthoven credits Waller with this distinction in his 1895 publication in Pflügers Archives “Über die Form des menschlichen Elektrokardiogramms”.

**Figure 10.** ECG demonstrating first-degree heart block.

**Figure 11.** ECG demonstrating abnormal Q waves in V1–V4. This is indicative of a previous infarction.
A normal ECG has only very small Q waves. A downward deflection immediately following a P wave that is wider than two small squares or greater in height than a third of the subsequent R wave is significant: such Q waves can represent previous infarction (see Figure 11, previous page).

**Figure 12.** ECG demonstrating left ventricular hypertrophy. Note also the T-wave inversion in leads V4–V6. This is often labeled “strain”.

**Figure 13.** ECG demonstrating left bundle branch block.

**Q waves**

A normal ECG has only very small Q waves. A downward deflection immediately following a P wave that is wider than two small squares or greater in height than a third of the subsequent R wave is significant: such Q waves can represent previous infarction (see Figure 11, previous page).
Large QRS complexes

Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) is one of the easiest and most useful diagnoses to make (see Figure 12). The Sokolow–Lyon index is the most commonly calculated index of estimation. Does the sum of the S wave in lead V1 (SV1) and the R wave in V6 (RV6) add up to more than 3.5 mV, ie, 35 small or seven big squares? If so, the patient has LVH by voltage criterion. Right ventricular hypertrophy is indicated by a dominant R wave in V1 (ie, R wave bigger than following S wave; Sokolow–Lyon index: R in V1 + S in V5 or V6 ≥ 1.05 mV) and right axis deviation.

Broad QRS complexes and strange-looking ECGs

A wide QRS complex despite sinus rhythm is the hallmark of bundle branch block. Left bundle branch block (LBBB) can cause the ECG to look extremely abnormal (see Figure 13). When faced with such an ECG – after calculating rate, rhythm, and axis – check the width of the QRS complex. If it is more than three small squares wide, it is abnormal. Bundle branch block can then be diagnosed by pattern recognition of the QRS complexes in the V1 and V6 leads (see Figure 14). New LBBB can be diagnostic of myocardial infarction (MI).

Figure 14. The shapes of V1 and V6 QRS complexes in left and right bundle branch block.

Figure 15. ECG demonstrating anteroseptal myocardial infarction. Note the ST-segment elevation.
ST segment changes

The ST segment extends from the end of the S wave to the start of the T wave. It should be flat or slightly upsloping and level with the baseline. Elevation of more than two small squares in the chest leads or one small square in the limb leads, combined with a characteristic history, indicates the possibility of MI (see Figure 15, previous page). ST depression is diagnostic of ischemia (see Figure 16). It is worth noting that although ST elevation can localize the lesion (eg, anterior MI,
inferior MI), ST depression cannot. Concave upwards ST elevation in all 12 leads is diagnostic of pericarditis.

**T waves**
In a normal ECG, T waves are upright in every lead except aVR. T-wave inversion can represent current ischemia or previous infarction (see Figure 17). In combination with LVH and ST depression, it can represent “strain”. This form of LVH carries a poor prognosis.

**Long QT interval**
The QT interval should be less than half of the R–R interval. Calculation of the corrected QT (QTc) is generally not necessary and usually will have been done by the ECG machine (but beware of blindly believing any automated diagnostic system). Conditions associated with a long QT interval are outlined in Table 3 (see Figure 18).

Long QT syndrome may also be drug-induced (see Table 4, p. 32). Once this occurs, the responsible drug needs to be discontinued.
**Pattern combinations**

**Digoxin**
A reverse tick ST depression is characteristic and does not indicate toxicity. Digoxin toxicity can result in dysrhythmia.

**Pulmonary embolism**
Sinus tachycardia is seen in many patients with pulmonary embolism. New right bundle branch block (RBBB) or right axis deviation with “strain” can also indicate PE. The classic $S_{i}Q_{III}T_{III}$ is less common.

**Hyperkalemia**
The absolute potassium level is less important than its rate of rise. ECG changes reflecting a rapid rise demand immediate action (see Figures 19–21). The level of danger increases as the ECG changes progress. The sequence generally follows the order:

- tall, tented T waves (see Figure 19)
- lengthening of the PR interval
- reduction in the P-wave height
- widening of the QRS complex (see Figure 20)
- “sinus” wave QRS pattern (see Figure 21)

A sinus-wave QRS should be treated immediately with calcium chloride, whilst hyperkalemia associated with lesser ECG changes can be treated with insulin/glucose infusion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Congenital</th>
<th>Acquired</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jervell and Lange–Nielsen syndrome</td>
<td>Amiodarone, sotalol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romano–Ward syndrome</td>
<td>Flecainide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypocalcemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypokalemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypomagnesemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phenothiazines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3.** Causes of a long QT interval.

---

Chapter 3
Figure 19. Hyperkalemia. Note the tall, tented T waves.

Figure 20. ECG demonstrating a widening of the QRS complex.
Table 4. Drug-induced increase in the QT interval and torsade de pointes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic name</th>
<th>QT interval</th>
<th>Torsade de pointes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antiarrhythmics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajmaline</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amiodarone</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinidine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disopyramide</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxifluridine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibutidil</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propafenone</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sotalol</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antibiotics (macrolides)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azithromycin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarithromycin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythromycin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roxithromycin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiramycin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antibiotics (quinolones)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatifloxacin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grepafloxacin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moxifloxacin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sparfloxacin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other antibiotics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antihistamines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astemizole</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clemastine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphenhydramine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxyzine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terfenadine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antidepressants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amitriptyline</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clomipramine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desipramine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxepine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imipramine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maprotiline</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuroleptics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amisulpride</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorpromazine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Droperidol</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluphenazine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melperone</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimozide</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulpiride</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thioridazine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiapride</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trazodone</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoxetine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxetine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sertraline</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anticonvulsants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproate</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other psychopharmaceuticals</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloralhydrate</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levo-methadone</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithium</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naratriptan</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sumatriptan</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venlafaxine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zolmitriptan</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anti-Parkinson's</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amantadine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budipine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antimalarials</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroquine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halofantrine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mefloquine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diuretics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indapamide</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lipid-lowering agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probucol</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Motility enhancers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisapride</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nootropic geriatrics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vincamine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chemotherapeutics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamoxifen</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentamidine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immunosuppressants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peptides</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octreotide</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Virostatics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foscarnet</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muscle relaxants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tizanidine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>X-ray contrast agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ioxaglate</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meglumine</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ A prolonged QT interval can occur or torsade de pointes was observed.

*Taken off the market.

*Suspended from the market, final decision by the regulatory authorities still awaited.

Indication limitations have been expressed.

Important tips on the use of the table: information is based on the latest scientific knowledge as far as it is generally available from published studies (Medline research), case reports, internet publications, specialist information, the Red List, and information from the regulatory authorities. In the case reports available about torsade de pointes, the causal relationship to the ingestion of the particular medication is no longer apparent; pure coincidence cannot be excluded in individual cases.
Figure 21. ECG demonstrating a sinus-wave QRS pattern.

PQRST?
Nobody knows for sure why these letters became standard. Certainly, mathematicians used to start lettering systems from the middle of the alphabet to avoid confusion with the frequently used letters at the beginning. Einthoven used the letters O to X to mark the timeline on his ECG diagrams and, of course, P is the letter that follows O. If the image of the PQRST diagram was striking enough to be adopted by researchers as a true representation of the underlying form, it would have been logical to continue the same naming convention when the more advanced string galvanometer started creating ECGs a few years later.

Further reading
Although few generalists actually perform echocardiograms, most order or have to interpret them at some stage. Our aim then is not to explain how to carry out echocardiography, but how to realize its potential and limitations.

**Background**

“Ultra” sound has a frequency above the range audible by humans (ie, >20,000 Hz). For adult cardiac imaging, ultrasound waves in the range of 4–7 MHz are used (intravascular ultrasound uses frequencies as high as 30 MHz). These are created within the ultrasound probe by striking piezo-electric crystals with an electric pulse, which stimulates the crystals to release sound waves. The central principle of ultrasound imaging is that, while most waves are absorbed by the body, those at interfaces between different tissue densities are reflected. In addition to emitting the ultrasound waves, the transducer detects the returning waves, processes the information, and displays it as characteristic images. Higher frequency ultrasound waves increase resolution, but decrease tissue penetration.

**Imaging modes**

There are three basic “modes” used to image the heart:

- two-dimensional (2D) imaging
- M-mode imaging
- Doppler imaging

**Two-dimensional imaging**

2D imaging is the mainstay of echo imaging and allows structures to be viewed moving in real time in a cross-section of the heart (two dimensions). It is used for detecting abnormal anatomy or abnormal movement of structures. The most common cross-sectional views are the parasternal long axis, the parasternal short axis, and the apical view (see Figure 1). The gastric or subcostal and suprasternal views are also commonly used.
M-mode imaging
The M-mode echo, which provides a 1D view, is used for fine measurements. Temporal and spatial resolutions are higher because the focus is on only one of the lines from the 2D trace (see Figure 2).

Doppler imaging
The concept of Doppler imaging is familiar to all those who have heard the note of a police siren change as it moves past them – as the police siren travels towards you, the frequency of the wave (pitch) appears to be higher than if it was stationary; as the siren travels away, the pitch appears to be lower.

Estimates of blood-flow velocity can be made by comparing the frequency change between the transmitted and reflected sound waves. In cardiac ultrasound, Doppler is used in three ways:
Continuous-wave Doppler
CW Doppler is sensitive, but, because it measures velocity along the entire length of the ultrasound beam and not at a specific depth, it does not localize velocity measurements of blood flow. It is used to estimate the severity of valve stenosis or regurgitation by assessing the shape or density of the output (see Figure 3).

Pulsed-wave Doppler
PW Doppler was developed because of the need to make localized velocity measurements of turbulent flow (it measures the blood-flow velocity within a small area at a specified tissue depth). It is used to assess ventricular in-flow patterns, intracardiac shunts, and to make precise measurements of blood flow at valve orifices.
Color-flow mapping
CFM uses measurements of the velocity and direction of blood flow to superimpose a color pattern onto a section of a 2D image (see Figure 4). Traditionally, flow towards the transducer is red, flow away from the transducer is blue, and higher velocities are shown in lighter shades. To aid observation of turbulent flow there is a threshold velocity, above which the color changes (in some systems to green). This leads to a “mosaic” pattern at the site of turbulent flow and enables sensitive screening for regurgitant flow.

Transesophageal echocardiography
Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is usually carried out under mild sedation with midazolam. A thin probe is passed down the esophagus until it is level with the heart. This position provides especially clear views. It is particularly useful for imaging posterior cardiac structures. The key indications for TEE are:

- infective endocarditis – if vegetations are not seen on transthoracic echo, but suspicion is high, or with prosthetic valves
- to rule out an embolic source (especially in atrial fibrillation)
- acute dissection
- mitral valve (MV) disease preoperatively

Contrast echocardiography
Contrast echo can be useful for confirming a diagnosis of atrial septal defect (ASD). Agitating saline or synthetic contrast create microbubbles. These are very reflective,
and when injected intravenously can be seen as opacification in the echo window. They are normally seen on the right side of the heart before being trapped and absorbed by the pulmonary capillaries, so have no route to the left side of the heart. The contrast created by the bubbles allows a left-to-right shunt to be seen as a jet “interrupting” the opacification of the right atrium. However, there is a theoretical risk of systemic air embolism with a right-to-left shunt.

**Applications**

Echo is the cheapest and least invasive method available for screening cardiac anatomy. Generalists most commonly request an echo to assess left ventricular (LV) dysfunction, to rule out the heart as a thromboembolic source, and to characterize murmurs. The approximate normal values for various cardiac structures are described in Table 1.

---

**Normal ranges for measures of systolic and diastolic function**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Echocardiography</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fractional shortening (%)</td>
<td>28–44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Doppler</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systolic velocity integral (cm)</td>
<td>15–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitral valve E (cm/s)</td>
<td>44–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitral valve A (cm/s)</td>
<td>20–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E:A ratio</td>
<td>0.7–3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid valve E (cm/s)</td>
<td>20–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid valve A (cm/s)</td>
<td>12–36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E:A ratio</td>
<td>0.8–2.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time intervals</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mitral E deceleration time (ms)</td>
<td>139–219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitral A deceleration time (ms)</td>
<td>&gt;70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isovolumic relaxation time (ms)</td>
<td>54–98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Normal intracardiac dimensions (cm)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left atrium</td>
<td>3.0–4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV diastolic diameter</td>
<td>4.3–5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV systolic diameter</td>
<td>2.6–4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV septum (diastole)</td>
<td>0.6–1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior wall (diastole)</td>
<td>0.6–1.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 1.** The approximate normal values for various cardiac structures. IV: interventricular; LV: left ventricular.
Systolic dysfunction
LV systolic dysfunction is assessed using the ejection fraction (the percentage of the end diastolic volume ejected during systole). In most cases, this is estimated by eye from all the available echo views. A normal ejection fraction is 50%–80%, but values as low as 5% are compatible with life (end-stage heart failure).

The E/A ratio
When flow across the MV is assessed with PW Doppler, two waves are characteristically seen. These represent passive filling of the ventricle (early [E] wave) and active filling with atrial systole (atrial [A] wave). Classically, the E-wave velocity is slightly greater than that of the A wave (see Figure 5). However, in conditions that limit the compliance of the LV, two abnormalities are possible:

- reversal – in which the A wave is greater than the E wave. This indicates slow filling caused by older age, hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), or diastolic dysfunction
- exaggeration of normal – a tall, thin E wave with a small or absent A wave. This indicates restrictive cardiomyopathy, constrictive pericarditis, or infiltrative cardiac disease (eg, amyloidosis)

Diastolic dysfunction
A normal LV ejection fraction in the presence of the heart failure syndrome leads to a search for diastolic dysfunction. Typical echo findings in diastolic dysfunction are normal LV cavity size, thickened ventricle, and reversed E/A ratio.

Wall-motion abnormality
When ischemia occurs, contractile abnormalities of segments of the myocardium can be detected by echo prior to the appearance of electrocardiogram (ECG) changes or symptoms. Therefore, echo can be a valuable tool in the diagnosis of
both stable coronary artery disease (via stress echo) and acute myocardial infarction. In the former situation, it offers localization of the ischemic region where the ECG cannot; in the latter, it offers some measure of the extent of the infarct and a screen for complications, such as ventricular septal defect (VSD).

**Valve assessment**
Echo is the tool of choice for the assessment of valvular abnormalities.

**Aortic stenosis**
The etiology of aortic stenosis (AS) can be confirmed by the visualization of either a bicuspid valve or calcification. The severity of the stenosis can be estimated by measuring high-velocity flow across the valve by Doppler. This can be converted to an estimation of the pressure drop. In addition, the effective orifice area can be measured (see Table 2).

**Aortic regurgitation**
CFM is the most useful technique for detecting and quantifying the degree of regurgitation. The width of the regurgitant jet and of the slope of the decline in pressure gradient between the left ventricle and the aorta (which is reduced already compared with normal) are measured.

**Mitral stenosis**
With mitral stenosis (MS), as with AS, calcified, immobile MV leaflets can be demonstrated with 2D and M-mode echo. Anterior motion of the posterior MV leaflet in diastole (caused by commissural fusion) is characteristic in MS. Doppler demonstrates increased flow velocity and can be used to estimate the effective orifice area (see Table 3).

**Mitral regurgitation**
As with aortic regurgitation, mitral regurgitation is assessed using CFM. The severity of mitral regurgitation is commonly reported as the area of the regurgitant jet expressed as a percentage of the area of the left atrium.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mild or no aortic stenosis</th>
<th>Severe aortic stenosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area of effective orifice (cm²)</td>
<td>&gt;1</td>
<td>&lt;0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velocity across valve (m/s)</td>
<td>&lt;3</td>
<td>&gt;4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradient of pressure drop (mm Hg)</td>
<td>0–60</td>
<td>&gt;60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.** Echo characteristics of aortic stenosis.
Mitral valve prolapse
The criteria for the diagnosis of MV prolapse (MVP) from an echo have changed over the years. Initial reports using the 4-chamber view suggested a population prevalence of almost 20%. However, a more accurate figure of approximately 5% results from stricter criteria. Most diagnose only on the basis of the parasternal long axis view. Some go so far as to suggest it is invalid to diagnose MVP on the 4-chamber view at all.

Paraprosthetic regurgitation
Although metal valves stop ultrasound completely, echo is a useful tool for studying prosthetic valve function. The TEE approach is often used.

Infective endocarditis
Echo is the key investigation in infective endocarditis and, although a low threshold for TEE is warranted by its higher detection rate, transthoracic echo can demonstrate vegetations in approximately 70% of cases (see Chapter 10, Infective endocarditis).

Embolic sources
The primary cardiac sources for embolism are:

- an akinetic ventricular segment
- an LV aneurysm
- the atrial appendage

These are best visualized with TEE.

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
Although hypertrophy is variable, echo remains the screening tool of choice in suspected cases. The classic features are asymmetrical hypertrophy of the interventricular septum and anterior movement of the MV in systole. LV function is normal, and there may be dynamic LV outflow tract obstruction.

Table 3. Echo characteristics of mitral stenosis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mild mitral stenosis</th>
<th>Severe mitral stenosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area of effective orifice (cm²)</td>
<td>&gt;1.5</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velocity across valve (m/s)</td>
<td>&lt;2.5</td>
<td>&gt;3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Further reading


Background

Coronary artery disease (CAD) is the most common cause of mortality in the developed world. It results from the collision of ancient genes with modern lifestyles: a hunter–gatherer lifestyle – with high daily energy expenditure and rare kills – favors a tendency to eat large quantities of high-calorie food when it is available. Such predispositions sit uneasily in a modern world with motorized transport and fatty snacks on every corner. Despite this, so-called “hardening of the arteries” was first described only in the 1700s, and it was not until the 1900s that a good description of myocardial infarction (MI) was forthcoming.

The term “coronary artery disease” encompasses a range of diseases that result from atheromatous change in coronary vessels. In the past, CAD was thought to be a simple, inexorable process of artery narrowing, eventually resulting in complete vessel blockage (and MI). However, in recent years the explanatory paradigm has changed because it was realized that a whole spectrum of coronary plaques exists – from stable (lipid-poor, thick fibrous cap) to unstable (lipid-rich, thin fibrous cap) (see Figure 1). When an unstable plaque ruptures – and the more unstable it is, the more likely it is to rupture – the subsequent release of prothrombotic and vasoconstrictive factors increases the likelihood of complete occlusion of the artery. It is the balance between the body’s prothrombotic and thrombolytic pathways at the rupture site that determines the clinical outcome. Transient occlusion leads to ischemia and pain; permanent occlusion leads to transmural MI (see Table 1).

**THROMBOSIS IN MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION**

*The hypothesis that thrombosis plays a central role in myocardial infarction was first proposed by James Herrick in JAMA in 1912. This paper was the first to suggest that clots, rather than a slow accretion of plaque, are responsible for the complete occlusion that would often result in death. Importantly, he was the first to link symptoms in living patients with coronary artery disease, and to suggest that patients can survive complete blockage. These ideas were radical and new and (not surprisingly) no one believed him.*
The establishment of these pathophysiological origins of CAD, together with the identification of improved clinical markers for ischemia and necrosis, has led to the proposal of a new (somewhat controversial) definition for acute MI: a rise and fall in troponin or the creatine kinase myocardial band fraction (CK-MB) (see “Markers of myocardial damage” section), plus at least one of the following:

- ischemic symptoms
- development of pathological Q waves on the electrocardiogram (ECG)
- ST-segment elevation or depression on the ECG
- coronary artery intervention (eg, angioplasty)

### Table 1. Subgroups of coronary artery disease presentations. MI: myocardial infarction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Presentation</th>
<th>Vascular event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stable angina</td>
<td>No plaque rupture, but symptomatic or limiting stable occlusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute coronary syndromes (unstable angina/non-Q wave MI)</td>
<td>Plaque rupture with transient or incomplete occlusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Plaque rupture with complete occlusion and tissue necrosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 1.** An atherosclerotic plaque consists of a core of dead foam cells (lipid-engorged macrophages and smooth muscle cells) covered by a fibrous cap (a region of the intimal layer that has become thickened as a result of medial smooth muscle cells depositing collagen and elastin fibers). The thickening artery wall of an atherosclerotic plaque gradually encroaches upon the luminal space and can eventually result in a restriction to blood flow. Unstable plaques, which are susceptible to rupture, are softer with a thinner fibrous cap. Plaque rupture triggers the formation of a blood clot, which can block the flow of blood through the artery. RBC: red blood cell; WBC: white blood cell.
Assessment

History and examination

History-taking is the most valuable technique for differentiating between the many causes of chest discomfort. The classic symptoms of angina are well known: a sensation of a constriction of the chest with variable levels of radiation to the neck, jaw, both arms, and occasionally to the epigastrium or through to the back. The pain is worse with exertion, especially in cold air; improved by rest and nitrates; and often follows a meal. Retrosternal pain in particular (often described by patients as “pressure”) suggests that angina is the cause. Pains that are localized elsewhere, described as sharp or stabbing, or reproduced by palpation are much less likely to be cardiac in origin.

The term “unstable angina” encompasses a number of presentations, including pain that:

- occurs at rest
- lasts longer than 30 minutes
- is not relieved by several doses of sublingual nitrate
- is elicited over days or weeks by gradually smaller amounts of exertion (crescendo angina)

Examination of the cardiovascular system is mandatory in any patient reporting chest pain. Sweating, nausea, and vomiting are suggestive of MI, while complications of MI—such as heart failure (third heart sound and basal crackles), ventricular septal defect (VSD), harsh systolic murmur, or papillary muscle rupture—should be excluded.

Atypical chest pain

A common presentation in general practice is chest pain accompanied by an atypical history. In such cases, it is essential that the history is accurately established and documented. The most common noncardiac cause is dyspepsia. Although chest pain following a big meal could have a cardiac, gastroesophageal, or biliary origin, pain resulting from exercise is rarely biliary. It may be difficult to differentiate esophageal spasm from cardiac pain as they are both improved by nitrate. Other noncardiac causes to consider are musculoskeletal, pericardial, and pleural.
Other forms of angina include:

- variant angina (also known as Prinzmetal’s angina), which causes an unpredictable pain – typically coming on at rest – and is associated with transient ST elevation on an ECG. It is thought to be due to coronary spasm and seems to be independent of atherosclerosis
- syndrome X – a condition in which the history is typical of coronary disease and there is ST depression on exercise, yet the coronary arteries are angiographically normal. It is thought to reflect small vessel disease and/or abnormal ventricular function
- dyspnea – angina can present as exertional dyspnea. Pay close attention to the pattern of onset and relief
- silent ischemia – diabetics, an important subgroup, can suffer from silent ischemia and even silent MI. Thus, even if there are no apparent symptoms of cardiac disease, a diabetic with an ECG abnormality should undergo stress testing and echocardiography to determine whether there is any indication for catheterization. One view is that all diabetics of greater than 5 years standing should be screened for cardiovascular disease.

The key message is that a patient with an atypical history should always be referred for exercise electrocardiography (see “Investigations” section). In more than 90% of cases, the existence of coronary disease can be predicted accurately from the combined results of exercise ECG and their history.

**Generalist management**

**Risk factors**

Risk factor assessment and management are central to the care of cardiac patients. The major independent and predisposing risk factors (see Tables 2 and 3) should be documented for every patient, and it is useful to include them in every referral.
Biochemical or physiological characteristics (modifiable)

- Elevated blood pressure
- Elevated plasma total cholesterol (LDL cholesterol)
- Low plasma HDL cholesterol
- Elevated plasma triglycerides
- Hyperglycemia/diabetes
- Obesity
- Thrombogenic factors

Personal characteristics (nonmodifiable)

- Older age
- Male gender
- Family history of CHD or other atherosclerotic vascular disease at early age (men <55 years, women <65 years)
- Personal history of CHD or other atherosclerotic vascular disease

Table 3. European Society of Cardiology table of lifestyles and characteristics associated with an increased risk of a future coronary heart disease (CHD) event. HDL: high-density lipoprotein; LDL: low-density lipoprotein.

**Smoking**

There are a wealth of products aimed at smoking cessation. Older products such as nicotine chewing gum have been replaced by nicotine patches and nicotine inhalers, and many products have been shown to have clear benefits in helping people to stop smoking. However, if someone is to succeed at giving up smoking, it is important that certain vital support mechanisms are in place before they attempt it:

- it is essential that the patients’ families and partners are supportive
- patients should allocate a particular date and time to stop smoking. This should be a few weeks subsequent to the decision to stop, to allow time for planning and reflection
- patients should identify (and write down) the “at-risk” times when they envisage that temptation and craving will be greatest, for example with coffee or in a bar. They can then focus, in advance, on these situations and devise a way to avoid giving in
- on the allotted date, patients should remove all cigarettes and smoking materials from the house
- patients should keep diaries of their progress and report regularly to their doctor

Most people can stop smoking using these techniques. In cases where it is not successful, pharmacological help in the form of bupropion (Zyban) may be indicated. Helping patients to stop smoking is an extremely worthwhile endeavor. The risk tables (see Figures 2 and 3) show just how much there is to be gained by changing smoking status.
**Basic science**

Exercise training exerts many beneficial changes at the cellular and molecular level. An exercise-induced increase in blood flow may exert its beneficial effects on vascular reactivity and structure through an increase in the elaboration of several endothelium-derived substances, such as nitric oxide, prostacyclin, and superoxide dismutase. Although prostacyclin may exert its antiatherogenic effects by inhibiting the uptake of cholesterol esters into macrophages or into smooth muscle cells, nitric oxide contributes strongly to the inhibition of monocyte adhesion, and inhibits platelet aggregation at much lower concentrations than those needed to inhibit adhesion, thereby allowing platelets to participate in the repair of the vessel wall, while at the same time preventing or limiting thrombus formation.

Flow also modulates the expression of numerous paracrine substances, including endothelial growth factors, matrix modulators, chemokines, and regulators of blood fluidity, all of which may participate in the beneficial effects of exercise-induced vascular remodeling and reactivity.

Finally, exercise-induced changes in flow also have other antiatherogenic effects. Endothelial cells exposed to shear stress elaborate less superoxide anion; this may in part be due to increased transcription of superoxide dismutase. There are also shear stress responsive elements in the promoter region of several adhesion molecules (eg, intercellular adhesion molecule) that may reduce their gene expression.

**Diet**

The central components of a healthy diet are well known: low in fat; low in salt; low in cholesterol; low in calories. In detail, patients should consume a diet high in fiber (>20 g/day), and low in fat (<10% of total amount of calories) and cholesterol (<300 mg/day). However, helping patients to achieve this is another matter. Dieticians and specialist nurses can give patients the advice and support they need to improve their diet.

**Physical activity**

It is very important that an increase in physical activity accompanies an improved diet and giving up smoking. Exercise can be an enjoyable undertaking for patients. It can help them to:

- improve their mood
- feel more energetic
- be less restricted in what they eat
- relax more
- sleep better
- take a break from their normal routine
With these benefits, it is surprising that anyone needs to be persuaded to exercise. Major bodies, led by the American College of Sports Medicine, recommend that patients exercise for 30 minutes on at least 3 days per week at a submaximal exercise intensity. However, exercise does not have to comprise formal exercise; it can include informal exercise, provided it is of adequate intensity. In this way, increases in physical activity can be absorbed into everyday life: for example, climbing the stairs instead of taking the elevator and walking to work instead of driving. In fact, walking, partly because it is so inefficient, is excellent exercise. Few people realize that walking a mile and running a mile use similar amounts of energy. Thus, there is no need for patients to join a gym (with all the expense that may be incurred) when daily brisk walking is ample exercise. Keeping a diary of their physical activity may help patients to sustain adequate amounts of daily exercise.

**Submaximal aerobic exercise in angina**

Many angina patients refrain from physical activity because they believe that the resulting pain is “dangerous”. However, aside from its well-known benefits in risk reduction, exercise can be as effective as β-blockade in the management of stable angina. It has been associated with increased plaque stability and even slight plaque shrinkage. It is recommended that patients exercise for 30–45 minutes per day, 4–5 times a week.

**Estimating risk**

Formal risk estimation is aided by a standard set of tables that were developed using epidemiological data gathered over many years (see Figures 2 and 3). These tables are based on:

- gender
- age
- presence of diabetes
- smoking
- systolic blood pressure
- total cholesterol to high-density lipoprotein (HDL) ratio

**Investigations**

**Electrocardiogram**

The ECG is a vital tool for assessing patients in both stable and emergency situations. Nevertheless, generalists in primary care do not always have ready access to it. Any patient presenting with clear cardiac chest pain should undergo an ECG immediately or as soon as possible (preferably even before a history is taken) to identify whether they are at high risk, ie, ST segment change or new left bundle branch block (LBBB). This facilitates prompt referral when necessary and, for thrombolysis, a door-to-needle time of less than 30 minutes. However, the ECG
is not absolute – ST-segment elevation is present in only 50% of enzyme-confirmed MIs (see “Markers of myocardial damage” section).

**Chest radiograph**
A chest x-ray (CXR) may be used to help rule out aortic dissection in an acute presentation, although the gold standard is computed tomography (CT). Otherwise, it is rarely helpful. It should not be carried out on a routine basis.

**Pharmacological management of angina**
Stable disease is treated with aspirin and agents that offload or reduce the workload of the heart. Thus, standard medication for stable angina includes β-blockers, aspirin, and, if still symptomatic, long-acting nitrates.

**Aspirin**
The evidence for aspirin is so strong that it has to be part of the drug regimen of every patient with CAD. If aspirin is not tolerated, clopidogrel may be given instead. In cases in which warfarin (Coumadin) has to be administered (eg, coronary disease and atrial fibrillation), aspirin is usually omitted, since oral anticoagulation with an international normalized ratio (INR) of 3–4 has been shown to be safe and effective.

**Oral long-acting nitrate**
Nitrates are smooth muscle relaxants with the ability to vasodilate both the arteriolar and venous circulation. This leads to reductions in both preload (venous return) and afterload (blood pressure). However, nitrate-free periods are necessary to avoid tolerance.

**Beta-blockers and calcium-channel blockers**
Beta-blockers work by reducing the heart rate (lengthening diastole increases the time for coronary perfusion) and reducing the effects of catecholamine-mediated increases in cardiac workload. Calcium-channel blockers cause coronary artery dilation and subsequently decrease cardiac workload by reducing the contractility of myocardial smooth muscle cells. Calcium-channel blockers can be divided into rate-limiting (eg, verapamil, diltiazem) and nonrate-limiting (dihydropyridines, eg, amlodipine). Dihydropyridines are generally prescribed for hypertension, whereas the others tend to be used in cases of angina because of their ability to reduce the heart rate. However, verapamil should not be used with β-blockers, which block the action of sympathetic hormones (resulting in a lower heart rate and blood pressure) (see Chapter 6, Hypertension).
Potassium-channel openers

Potassium-channel openers, such as nicorandil, are a new class of agents for the treatment of angina. They exert both direct action on cardiac mitochondria and a nitrate-like effect. These are not yet available in the US.

Lipid-lowering agents

Lipids are insoluble in water. Hence, they are transported around the body as lipoproteins. Lipoproteins are made up of cholesterol, triglycerides, phospholipids, and protein. The major classes of lipoproteins (which vary in density, size, and triglyceride/cholesterol ratio) are:

- chylomicrons (the largest and least dense)
- very low-density lipoproteins (VLDLs)
- low-density lipoproteins (LDLs)
- HDLs

Lipids originate from two sources: endogenous lipids, synthesized in the liver, and exogenous lipids, ingested and processed in the intestine (see Figure 4).

Dietary cholesterol and triglycerides are packaged into chylomicrons in the intestine, before passing into the bloodstream via lymphatics. Chylomicrons are broken down by lipoprotein lipase (LPL) in the capillaries of muscle and adipose tissue to fatty acids, which then enter the cells. The chylomicron remnants, which have lost much of their triglyceride content, are taken up by the liver for disposal.

The liver synthesizes triglycerides and cholesterol, and packages them as VLDLs before releasing them into the blood. When VLDLs (which consist mainly of triglyceride) reach muscle and adipose blood vessels, their triglycerides are hydrolyzed by LPL to fatty acids. The fatty acids that are released are taken up by the surrounding muscle and adipose cells. During this process, the VLDLs become progressively more dense and turn into LDLs. While most of the resulting LDLs are taken up by the liver for disposal, some circulate and distribute cholesterol to the rest of the body tissues.

HDLs, which are also secreted from the liver and intestine, have the task of preventing lipid accumulation. They remove surplus cholesterol from tissues and transfer it to LDLs that return it to the liver.

To regulate cholesterol uptake, cells vary the expression of their LDL receptors. Elevated concentrations of lipid (hyperlipidemia) can lead to the development of atherosclerosis and CAD. VLDLs and LDLs are atherogenic lipoproteins, whereas HDL concentrations are inversely related to the incidence of CAD. Hence,
treatments for hyperlipidemia aim to reduce LDL levels and raise HDL levels. Pharmacotherapeutic options in hyperlipidemia include:

- statins, which inhibit hydroxymethylglutaryl coenzyme A reductase (HMG-CoA), the rate-limiting enzyme of cholesterol synthesis in the liver. A reduction in cholesterol synthesis causes the liver to increase the number of LDL receptors, reducing circulating concentrations of both cholesterol and triglyceride
- cholestyramine, which is a lipid-lowering drug that acts by sequestering bile acids in the gut, thus increasing the synthesis of bile acids from cholesterol
- fibrates, which reduce the level of VLDL by increasing the activity of the VLDL-hydrolyzing enzyme LPL.
Guidelines for the use of lipid-lowering therapy have become more aggressive over the past few years following the results of major trials showing mortality benefit for the use of statins. Most guidelines recommend statin treatment for a patient with CAD with a 10-year risk that is greater than 20% (high risk) once a trial of dietary therapy has been unsuccessful. However, treatment can be cost effective with a 10-year risk of 10%. Recent trials have identified anti-inflammatory properties of statins and benefit even in patients with normal cholesterol levels. Dosage should be adjusted according to cholesterol levels. As part of secondary prevention, the following levels should be reached: total cholesterol, <200 mg/dL (5.2 mmol/L); HDL, >40 mg/dL (1 mmol/L); LDL, <100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L); triglyceride, <200 mg/dL (2.3 mmol/L).

Refer with confidence

Early management of stable coronary disease is mostly done in the community. Risk factor and stepwise pharmacological management of stable angina are appropriate. If there is any doubt about the diagnosis, a noninvasive test for coronary disease – such as an exercise ECG – should be carried out. Exercise ECG is increasingly carried out by generalists in primary care and hospitals. Pain that is resistant to medical therapy or crescendo symptoms warrants immediate presentation to an emergency room to rule out MI. The patient should then be referred to a cardiologist for further investigation, if needed. When referring patients who have had prior intervention, try to summarize the details of previous revascularization. For example:

- two-vessel disease (left anterior descending [LAD], circumflex artery)
- previous left internal mammary artery (LIMA) graft to LAD, percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) to right coronary artery (RCA)
- previous saphenous vein graft (SVG) to circumflex artery

Including this type of detail will greatly increase the usefulness of a referral letter.

Specialist management

Stable angina: assessment

Exercise electrocardiography

Exercise ECG is the mainstay test for the diagnosis of CAD. It is usually carried out on a treadmill, but bicycle exercise can also be used. The patient exercises according to a set protocol from rest to maximum exertion, which should be reached in 8–12 minutes. The protocol most commonly used was originally described by Robert Bruce and bears his name (see Figure 5). There are, however, good reasons to consider a protocol that is individualized for each patient. Diagnostic exercise
Chapter 5

tests focus predominantly on the ST segment, which must fall more than 1 mm from rest and be horizontal or downsloping to be significant. ST depression does not localize ischemia so it cannot reveal anything about a suspected coronary lesion, but it does enable a classification of mild, intermediate, or severe CAD to be made.

The exercise test is also useful for recording other variables, ie, work capacity; maximum heart rate and chronotropic incompetence; blood pressure rise and recovery; and heart rate recovery. Work capacity (presumably reflecting left ventricular [LV] function) and heart rate recovery are very strong prognostic indicators for CAD. Contraindications to exercise testing and reasons for stopping an exercise test are outlined in Table 4.

It is important to appreciate where the value of the exercise test lies:

- exercise ECG on its own has low sensitivity (<50%) but high specificity (>90%) – ie, it is very good at ruling disease in, but not good at ruling it out
- the meaning of the test results is significantly affected by the pretest probability of disease (see Table 5). For example, exercise-induced ST depression in a young woman with no risk factors is likely to be a false positive
- incorporating clinical and demographic information into the basic test result by calculating diagnostic “scores” can increase the sensitivity and specificity to >90% (see Figure 6)
- patients without a clear diagnosis from the exercise tolerance test should have another noninvasive test

Figure 5. (a) The Bruce exercise protocol. The patient starts exercising at a speed of 2.7 km/h on a gradient of 10%. The workload is intensified every 3 minutes by increasing the speed and the incline of the treadmill, until the endpoint is achieved. (b) The modified Bruce exercise protocol is less intense to start with and is used to assess frailer patients, such as the elderly or those who have suffered a myocardial infarction.
A diagnostic algorithm for CAD is outlined in Figure 7. Most guidelines suggest the use of an alternative test if the preprobability is low. If the preprobability is high, exercise testing adds little in the way of diagnosis, but is useful for risk stratification. The primary role of exercise testing is where preprobability is intermediate.

**Nuclear cardiology**
Isotopes such as thallium-201 or technetium (Tc)-99m can be used to provide information on cardiac function.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraindications to exercise testing</th>
<th>Reasons for stopping an exercise test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unstable angina</td>
<td>Development of anginal symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left main stem disease</td>
<td>Fall &gt;15 mm Hg or failure to increase systolic blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute myocarditis or pericarditis</td>
<td>Arrhythmia development – ventricular in particular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Untreated congestive cardiac failure</td>
<td>An ST-segment depression of &gt;2 mm in chest leads or &gt;1 mm in limb leads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evidence of pyrexial or “flu”-like illnesses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe aortic stenosis or HCM with marked outflow obstruction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissecting aneurysm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adults with complete heart block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Untreated severe hypertension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBBB (the test is nondiagnostic)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.** Contraindications to and reasons for stopping an exercise test. HCM: hypertrophic cardiomyopathy; LBBB: left bundle branch block.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age (years)</th>
<th>Nonanginal chest pain</th>
<th>Atypical angina</th>
<th>Typical angina</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Men</td>
<td>Women</td>
<td>Men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–39</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40–49</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50–59</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60–69</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 5.** Pretest likelihood of coronary artery disease (CAD) in symptomatic patients according to age and sex – each value represents the percentage of patients found to have significant CAD on catheterization. Reproduced with permission from Lippincott Williams & Wilkins (Gibbons RJ, Chatterjee K, Daley J et al. ACC/AHA/ACP-ASIM Guidelines for the Management of Patients with Chronic Stable Angina: Executive Summary and Recommendations. *Circulation* 1999;99:2829–48).

A diagnostic algorithm for CAD is outlined in Figure 7. Most guidelines suggest the use of an alternative test if the preprobability is low. If the preprobability is high, exercise testing adds little in the way of diagnosis, but is useful for risk stratification. The primary role of exercise testing is where preprobability is intermediate.
Perfusion imaging is used to assess regional blood flow by comparing the relative distribution of isotope at rest and under conditions of stress. Stress is provided either by exercise or by pharmacological tools such as inotropes (eg, dobutamine) or vasodilators (eg, adenosine or dipyridamole). The isotope is injected at the peak of exercise and the image captured with a gamma camera. Rest images are usually achieved several hours later. The “exercise” and “rest” images are compared to identify perfusion defects that are either “fixed” (eg, the scar of an old MI) or “reversible” (ischemic disease). Thallium-201 has been the isotope of choice for many years, but more recently centers have been using Tc-99m-labeled compounds, such as sestamibi, which achieve a higher resolution from a lower dose of radiation. Single photon emission CT (SPECT) is a technique that employs a gamma camera head that rotates around the patient to provide three-dimensional images.

Isotopes are also used in ventriculography. Estimates of LV function arrived at using this imaging technique are more accurate and reproducible than those resulting from echo. Consequently, ventriculography is indicated in:

---

**Figure 6.** The Duke score, which is the most commonly used risk score, can be used for diagnosis as well as prognosis. To use this nomogram: determine (i) the maximum amount of downsloping or planar ST depression, and (ii) the type of angina during exercise. Connect these to give a point on the ischemia reading line. Then connect this point to the MET level (or duration of the Bruce protocol). Where this line dissects the prognosis line gives an estimate of risk. MET metabolic unit – 1 MET equates to resting metabolic rate (typically 3.5 mL/kg/min).
Two types of protocol are used: equilibrium and first-pass. The former, which is more common, uses a sample of the patient’s blood labeled with Tc-99m. Information is gathered from each heartbeat over the time of equilibration (a few minutes) then averaged to give the final reading. In the first-pass technique, a bolus of radionuclide is injected and information is gathered over a much shorter time with a fast gamma camera.

**Stress echocardiography**

Stress echo is gaining in popularity because it has:

- a higher predictive value than exercise ECG
- a lower cost and better safety profile than perfusion scintigraphy

Ultrasound is used to detect the difference in wall movement between ischemic and nonischemic myocardium (nonischemic myocardium moves less). Furthermore, the location of the wall-motion abnormalities enables the coronary
disease pattern to be predicted – this is not possible from ST-segment depression on an exercise ECG. Stress echo is thus indicated when:

- LBBB is present on the resting ECG
- the exercise ECG is inconclusive for other reasons
- immobility or lung disease precludes the practical use of exercise as a cardiac stress (pharmacological stress echo only)

Stress echo can also provide information on stunned or hibernating myocardium. The former is myocardium that after a period of acute ischemia and reperfusion remains, for a time, hypokinetic at rest. Hibernating myocardium is a more chronic situation in which the blood flow of a segment is not adequate for function, yet is sufficient for it to remain viable. During periods of stress, these areas of myocardium “recover” and their viability can be detected as improvements (compared with at rest) in segmental contraction on exposure to low-dose pharmacological stress.

Stress echo is a useful technique in the hands of an experienced operator in a patient with a good echo window. Views can also be greatly improved by the use of a supine bicycle.

**Electron beam computed tomography**

This is a new technique that relies on imaging calcium in coronary lesions. It can quantify the “atherosclerotic burden” in the form of a calcium score to give an estimate of risk or to monitor the effect of, for example, lipid-lowering therapy. However, there is some doubt over how much information this measure adds to standard risk factors. Furthermore, vulnerable plaque often does not contain much calcium. The “holy grail” is a test that can locate and quantify “vulnerable” plaque, but this has not yet been found.

**Magnetic resonance imaging**

Most cardiologists agree that the future of noninvasive imaging of the heart lies with MRI. This technology can fulfill many of the functions of traditional tests and in most cases improve on them:

- cardiac anatomy and morphology can be assessed with a high degree of spatial resolution using “black-blood” imaging
- in cine mode (like two-dimensional echo), resolutions can be achieved that are significantly greater than those obtained with ultrasound and good views can be imaged and processed in under 30 seconds
- LV function – including under exercise/pharmacological stress – can be achieved with a single breath-hold and the circumferential shortening calculated
wall-motion abnormalities can be assessed using tagging techniques
perfusion imaging can be carried out with a single breath-hold
and two R–R intervals

In fact, the only technique that is still some way from routine clinical application
is magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) of the coronary vessels (larger vessel
MRA has been possible for some time). However, as new technology moves the
field forward, this is likely to become more attainable, and with it the tempting
prospect of cross-sectional imaging and plaque characterization.

Stable angina: treatment
Cardiac catheterization
Since cardiac MRI is still only available in the bigger centers, coronary artery
catheterization remains the diagnostic gold standard in CAD. As the conduit for
coronary intervention, its position is also safe from advances in imaging
technology. Catheterization can also be used in a variety of settings aside from
CAD, such as ventricular dysfunction, valve disease, detection and quantification
of shunts, and other congenital and acquired structural abnormalities.

The basic procedure of PTCA involves cannulation of the femoral artery, with
manipulation of a catheter over a guide wire to the site of stenosis. Dye is injected
into each coronary artery in turn to assess flow. Flow is graded using a system first
put forward by the TIMI (Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction) investigators
(see Table 6). In balloon angioplasty a balloon is inflated (using the image-
enhancing contrast dye) to compress the atheroma and dilate the artery (see
Figure 8). Until recently, this was the intervention of choice. However, balloon
angioplasty has a restenosis rate of 30% over 6 months and a high rate of coronary
artery dissection. Consequently, the use of coronary artery stents (see Figure 8),
which have lower rates of restenosis and artery dissection, has become common
practice. These are deployed using a balloon. Most recent work has focussed on
drug-eluting stents (which elute anti-inflammatory or anti-proliferative agents),
which seem dramatically to reduce the incidence of restenosis.

PIONEERS
In 1929, Werner Forssmann – a German cardiologist – went against the express
advice of his boss and, with the help of a nurse, inserted a catheter through an
arm vein into his own heart. This was the first time a human heart had ever been
catheterized. He saw the successful catheterization images on a fluoroscope
screen – only by using a mirror. A pioneer of cardiology, he published his paper
in Klinische Wochenschrift in 1929 and, although he catheterized only one
patient’s heart, he went on to catheterize his own heart another eight times.
Other, less common percutaneous techniques include radioactive stents and atherectomy (where the atheroma is physically removed from the artery).

Insertion of a metal object into an artery is a prothrombotic event. Hence, stenting is carried out in conjunction with antithrombotic therapy. Infusional antithrombotic agents (eg, abciximab – see below) are used as an adjunct during angioplasty while oral antiplatelet agents, such as ticlopidine and clopidogrel, are used for 1 month post stent. (However, ticlopidine has been plagued by problems of bone marrow suppression.)

Abciximab – a chimeric murine–human Fab1 fragment monoclonal antibody – and the small molecule inhibitors tirofiban and eptifibatide are members of a new class of antithrombotics. These agents function by inhibiting glycoprotein (GP)IIb/IIIa, a receptor abundant on platelets. When platelets are activated, this receptor binds fibrinogen and von Willebrand factor, leading to platelet aggregation.

The benefit from these agents almost certainly relates to microembolization since:

- there is good evidence from autopsy studies that, following spontaneous or instrumented coronary plaque disruption, small aggregates of platelets, cholesterol, or other plaque material can be found in distal microvessels
- it has been demonstrated, using filter devices and contrast echo, that microembolization is common following percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) and is almost certainly the basis of “no reflow” – when perfusion is limited following PCI despite adequate restoration of flow in the infarct-related artery
- troponin levels, which are thought to be a sensitive marker for this type of damage, are elevated following approximately 40% of procedures. (Note that, in unstable angina, the benefit of GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors is not limited to those with elevated troponin levels.)

### Table 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contrast flow</th>
<th>TIMI grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prompt anterograde flow and rapid clearing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowed distal filling but full opacification of distal vessel</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small amount of flow but incomplete opacification of distal vessel</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No contrast flow</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

System (devised by the TIMI [Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction] investigators) used to grade the flow of contrast dye that has been injected into coronary arteries during percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty.
Overall, complications from cardiac catheterization are relatively rare (totaling ~5%). They include:

- contrast allergy response (very rare due to modern dyes)
- local hemorrhage from puncture sites with subsequent thrombosis
- false aneurysm or arteriovenous (AV) malformation
- vasovagal reactions
- coronary dissection
- aortic dissection or ventricular perforation
- air or atheroma embolism, which can occur in either the coronary or other arterial circulations with consequent ischemia or stroke
- ventricular dysrhythmias, which are seen and may even cause death in the setting of left main stem disease
Overall mortality rates are quoted at less than one in 1,000 cases, but this increases to one in 100 for higher risk cases.

**Coronary artery bypass grafting**

Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) is the technique of choice for three-vessel disease with depressed LV function and left main stem coronary disease. However, since coronary interventions have become much more sophisticated some studies have shown equal benefit from percutaneous treatment as compared with surgical treatment in patients with three-vessel disease. During surgery, the patient undergoes sternotomy followed by heart–lung bypass and cardiac arrest. A portion of the saphenous vein is dissected from the leg, reversed (to orientate the venous valves in the appropriate direction), and attached proximally to the aortic root and distally to the coronary artery (see Figure 9). The LIMA, which originates from the left subclavian artery, can also be used as a conduit. It is disconnected at its distal end only and the cut end is connected to the LAD. In the same way, the right internal mammary artery (RIMA) can be connected to the RCA. A clear benefit of LIMA/RIMA CABG is improved graft patency, both perioperatively and in the long term (10 years). Other arteries that can be used include the radial and the gastroepiploic.

Due to the risks of heart–lung bypass – such as postbypass cognitive deficit – some centers now practice beating heart surgery. In this procedure the heart is not arrested: the section of the heart that is to be operated on is stabilized locally by the “suckers” (vacuum-operated suction clamps) of a device known as an octopus. Another technique is minimally invasive bypass, which uses small incisions and LIMA grafts.
Evidence base

With these rapid advances in both surgical and percutaneous techniques, much of the evidence base is out of date. For example, there are no definitive data indicating that angioplasty saves lives in stable CAD. Previous trials have shown that CABG can benefit outcome in: symptomatic, significant left main stem disease; symptomatic proximal three-vessel disease; and two-vessel disease including the proximal LAD. Patients with moderately impaired LV function benefit more from CABG than those with poor LV function, who have greater operative mortality (overall mortality is around 2.8%, but rises to 3.7%–12% for an emergency procedure).

Most cardiologists believe that new trials will demonstrate a mortality benefit for coronary stenting, possibly for three-vessel disease and perhaps even over and above that of bypass.

Figure 9. Sites of heart bypass grafting: a saphenous vein graft and a left internal mammary artery graft are shown.
Risk assessment is the key to in-hospital management of acute coronary syndromes (ACS). Patients with ST elevation need to be considered immediately for thrombolysis or acute intervention. Other patients should be closely monitored (preferably in a coronary care unit) if they have risk factors, previous infarction, poor ventricular function, and changing ST segments. In this situation, the key investigation is the measurement of cardiac enzymes.

Markers of myocardial damage

A number of markers for not only infarction, but also noninfarct ischemia, are now available. The transaminases aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT) no longer offer any advantage over the other markers and in fact often cause false-positive results. Timescales of the variation in levels of the most commonly used markers for myocardial damage are outlined in Table 7 and Figure 10. Of the markers in Table 7, troponin I or T are the most specific and sensitive markers to rule acute MI out or in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>Initial rise</th>
<th>Peak</th>
<th>Return to normal</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Troponin I/T</td>
<td>2–4 h</td>
<td>10–24 h</td>
<td>5–10 d</td>
<td>Troponin I and T are sensitive and specific markers (unlike troponin C). Their blood level clearly relates to risk and thus they represent a powerful tool for risk stratification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatine kinase(^a)</td>
<td>3–4 h</td>
<td>10–24 h</td>
<td>2–4 d</td>
<td>CK-MB is the main cardiac isoenzyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>10 h</td>
<td>24–72 h</td>
<td>14 d</td>
<td>Myocardium mainly has LDH1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoglobin</td>
<td>1–2 h</td>
<td>4–8 h</td>
<td>24 h</td>
<td>Convenient early marker due to availability of assay, but not cardiac specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart fatty-acid binding proteins</td>
<td>1.5 h</td>
<td>5–10 h</td>
<td>24 h</td>
<td>Undergoing evaluation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7. Timescales for the variation in levels of markers for myocardial damage.

CK-MB: creatine kinase myocardial band fraction; LDH1: lactate dehydrogenase 1.

\(^a\)Creatine kinase has three isoenzymes, of which CK-MB is the most cardiac specific. However, other organs also possess this enzyme in small quantities. It has been suggested that a CK-MB/CK ratio of over 2.5 is very specific for myocardial infarction in the context of chest pain. However, even this is inaccurate in situations of significant acute or chronic skeletal injury, where CK levels are also high.

Acute coronary syndromes: assessment

Risk assessment is the key to in-hospital management of acute coronary syndromes (ACS). Patients with ST elevation need to be considered immediately for thrombolysis or acute intervention. Other patients should be closely monitored (preferably in a coronary care unit) if they have risk factors, previous infarction, poor ventricular function, and changing ST segments. In this situation, the key investigation is the measurement of cardiac enzymes.
Acute coronary syndromes: treatment

Pharmacological agents

The first-line treatment of any ACS is oxygen, aspirin, heparin, and β-blockade. Clopidogrel is an alternative to aspirin and diltiazem is an alternative to β-blockade. Low molecular-weight heparins have advantages over heparin, such as:

- simple administration
- better bioavailability
- no requirement for monitoring
- enhanced antifactor Xa activity
- lower rates of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)

Nitrates can be given intravenously for closer control of pain, unless there is hypotension or suspicion of a posterior infarction that needs higher filling pressures. Tolerance to nitrates occurs very quickly (24–36 hours) so the quicker the infusion can be weaned, the better. Opiate analgesia is also used for pain. In both cases, there may be benefit from GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors (see above). Patients with positive troponin levels should undergo immediate catheterization. Otherwise, patients should rest until they are pain-free. After 48 hours without pain, patients should undergo cardiac catheterization.

Figure 10. Appearance of cardiac markers in the blood after onset of symptoms. CK: creatine kinase; CK-MB: creatine kinase myocardial band fraction; LDH: lactate dehydrogenase.
Myocardial infarction
If MI is confirmed by history and ST elevation (1 mm in limb leads, 2 mm in chest leads, or new LBBB) or elevated troponin plus either of these, the patient must quickly be taken to the catheterization laboratory. If this facility is not available, the doctor should immediately: (1) rule out contraindications to thrombolysis (see “Thrombolysis” section) and (2) arrange for analgesia and thrombolysis to be set up, before (3) completing the history and examination.

Primary PTCA
Recently – primarily due to improvements in devices, adjunctive therapy (GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors), and user experience – in cases of acute MI, the superiority of PTCA over thrombolysis alone has become clear. Most lesions (80%) are suitable for PTCA, particularly if they are discrete, proximal, uncalcified, subtotally occluded, without thrombus, and away from the side branches or divisions of a vessel. As such, primary PTCA is the procedure of choice for patients within 12 hours of the onset of MI symptoms. Current evidence suggests that patients of less than 75 years with cardiogenic shock (occurring within 36 hours of MI) benefit most from primary PTCA (within 18 hours of onset of shock) in an appropriate center with experienced personnel. In cases of poor LV function, intra-aortic balloon pumping (see Chapter 7, Heart failure) is useful in the setting of proximal LAD or mainstem stenting.

Thrombolysis
Thrombolysis is given as an infusion of (typically) streptokinase or tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) over 30 minutes to 1 hour, depending on the protocol. Aspirin and (intravenous) β-blocker should also be given acutely. Thrombolysis is beneficial up to 12 hours after the onset of pain, but may be given up to 24 hours afterwards in the context of continuing pain or a deteriorating condition.

The choice of thrombolytic agent is controversial. tPA and similar recombinant agents are still from 5- to 7-times more expensive than streptokinase and thus only tend to be used in the following situations:

- where streptokinase has been administered previously
- where recent proven streptococcal throat infections have occurred
- in cases of hypotension

However, even with large anterior MI in younger patients presenting within 4 hours (a situation where tPA is often recommended first-line), the absolute added mortality benefit is only 1% above streptokinase.

Intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) can be an important complication of thrombolysis. Since heparin is associated with an increased risk of ICH (streptokinase treatment
Coronary artery disease

has a lower rate of ICH when it is administered without heparin), there is particular concern with respect to the administration of tPA (as it is usually given with heparin) to hypertensive patients above 65 years of age who are less than 70 kg in weight. Partly as a result of these concerns, several centers have explored the use of low-dose thrombolytic treatment in combination with GPIIb/IIIa inhibition. The results of these trials have been encouraging.

Recanalization is achieved following thrombolysis in approximately 70% of cases (compared with 15% of cases without thrombolysis). As this leaves a significant minority needing further attention, all patients should be reviewed 2 hours following thrombolysis. Rethrombolysis or coronary intervention should be considered if there is no resolution in the ST segment.

There are few absolute contraindications to thrombolysis and risks must be weighed against benefits in each individual case, particularly in the face of a large anterior infarct in a patient where access to primary PTCA is unavailable. However, there are some absolute contraindications and some notable relative contraindications.

Absolute contraindications are:

- suspected aortic dissection (demands urgent CT, which is the gold standard, MRI, or transesophageal echo)
- active internal bleeding or uncontrollable external bleeding (excluding menses)
- recent head trauma (<2 weeks)
- intracranial neoplasms
- history of proven hemorrhagic stroke or cerebral infarction within 12 months
- untreated diabetic hemorrhagic/proliferative retinopathy
- BP >180/110 mm Hg uncontrolled (reduce with nitrates, β-blockade, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors)

Relative contraindications are:

- pregnancy
- traumatic prolonged CPR
- anticoagulation or INR >1.8
- bleeding disorders
- recent surgery (within 3 weeks)
- probable intracardiac thrombus (eg, atrial fibrillation with mitral stenosis)
- active peptic ulcer
Basic science

Atherosclerosis is initiated by a combination of circulating factors, such as cholesterol, and hemodynamic forces (common sites for atherosclerosis are areas where arteries branch). LDL and circulating leukocytes penetrate the arterial wall at regions of high shear stress (turbulent flow). In its atherogenic oxidized form, LDL enters macrophages, converting them to foam cells in the process. Oxidized LDL also enhances the growth factor-mediated migration of monocytes and smooth muscle cells to the intima, where the latter differentiate to form the fibrous cap of the mature atherosclerotic plaque. Figure 11 shows the layers of a vessel wall.

As a result of our understanding of these processes, there is much experimental interest in factors that contribute to the attraction and adhesion of leukocytes (chemokines and adhesion molecules), the receptors that modulate LDL uptake (scavenger receptors), enzymes that degrade the cap (matrix metalloproteinases), and protective species (such as nitric oxide). With inflammation a central component of our current appreciation of atherosclerosis, there is much interest in circulating markers (such as C-reactive protein) and pharmaceutical interventions that decrease inflammation (aspirin and statins).

Arrhythmia

Reperfusion arrhythmias are common in the first 2 hours following thrombolysis. In addition to ensuring that plasma potassium is above 4.5, intravenous amiodarone and therapeutic-dose magnesium are indicated for sustained ventricular tachycardia or in ventricular fibrillation as adjuncts to defibrillation. Amiodarone is usually given via a central line, but can also be administered via a large antecubital cannula, although the latter has a slightly higher risk of local necrosis. Arrhythmias occurring more than 48 hours after an acute MI are associated with a worse prognosis and should be investigated further by coronary angiography to rule out hemodynamically relevant coronary stenoses, and electrophysiological studies to rule out scar-tissue substrate.

Other therapy

Glycemic control should be optimized in all diabetic patients, preferably with the use of sliding-scale insulin.

Oral inotropes should be avoided since almost all randomized trials have shown an increased mortality over placebo.

Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and β-blockers are given within the first 24 hours post-MI (in the absence of hypotension or other specific contraindications). However, although there is clear evidence for the benefit of each
agent individually, there are few data on their effect when used in combination. Until further data are available, both should be given together.

Short-acting calcium-channel blockers of the dihydropyridine type are contraindicated in acute MI. The longer-acting dihydropyridines may reduce reinfarction in patients with a first non-Q-wave infarction or inferior infarction in the absence of LV dysfunction and pulmonary edema. However, their benefit over aspirin and β-blockade in the context of MI is unclear.

Although warfarin provides no general benefit, in those patients with mural LV thrombus following a large acute anterior MI, it can reduce the overall rate of cerebrovascular complications (2%–3%) by more than half. Thus, it is recommended for up to 6 months following infarction, or longer if the thrombus is still nonlaminar on echo.
Refer with confidence

Practices vary enormously from center to center, but it is still common for hospital generalists to manage non-ST elevation, low-risk ACS, and even MI where no facilities for intervention are available. In these situations, the most common scenarios for referral to cardiology would be:

- recurrent pain following proven MI
- unstable pain that refuses to settle
- recurrent episodes of atypical pain with no ECG change or enzyme rise

Cardiac rehabilitation

Although the general phenomenon of MI has been recognized for about 100 years, for the first 70 years our approach to its treatment was diametrically opposite to that which we now propose. Complete immobilization for anything from 4 to 8 weeks – even to the point where patients were fed, washed, and shaved – was thought to help the heart to form a firm scar. Exercise was thought to increase the risk of ventricular aneurysm, cardiac rupture, congestive heart failure, and sudden death.

How bold then were the early pioneers, such as Terry Kavanagh at the Toronto Rehab center, who in 1973 entered seven post-MI patients for the Boston Marathon (all seven finished). Not long after that, as the medical profession gained confidence in this new-found approach, the *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* was founded by Mike Pollock and Victor Froelicher, and other pioneers were soon taking the field forward. Today, controlled trials have demonstrated that cardiac rehabilitation is not only safe and saves lives (25% reduction in mortality at 3 years), but is more cost-effective than other post-MI treatment interventions, such as thrombolytic therapy, coronary bypass surgery, and cholesterol-lowering drugs (though less cost-effective than smoking cessation programs).

Effective cardiac rehabilitation is multilayered and involves permanent lifestyle changes – such as the incorporation of regular physical activity into everyday life – to improve the risk profile. The many components of rehabilitation are outlined in Table 8. Programs are usually run by specialist nurses and physiologists, together with a cardiologist. However, in the absence of a local formal program, most of the components can be managed in the community. The potential benefits are enormous. The dramatic effect of cardiac rehabilitation is thought to be due to improvements in lipid profile, endothelial function, body composition, autonomic tone, fibrinolysis, and psychological well-being.
Coronary artery disease

Elements of a cardiac rehabilitation program

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• medical history and examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ECG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• risk assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• goal setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Low-fat diet: a diet high in fiber (>20 g/day), and low in fat (<10% of total amount of calories) and cholesterol (<300 mg/day)

Management of lipid levels

Management of hypertension

Cessation of smoking

Weight reduction: body mass index <25 kg/m²

Management of diabetes

Psychosocial management
  • identify depression, anxiety, social isolation, anger, and hostility
  • stress reduction

Activity counseling and exercise training
  • specific individualized aerobic and resistance training schedule, ie, 30 min/day on at least 3 days a week

Table 8. Elements of a cardiac rehabilitation program.

Further reading


Background

Approximately one in four adults in the western world suffers from hypertension. Of these, 32% are not aware that they have it, 15% are not on any therapy, and 26% are on inadequate therapy. Only 27% are receiving adequate therapy.

Hypertension is a difficult condition to manage because patients are generally asymptomatic and treatment is preventative rather than palliative. Convincing patients of the need for poorly tolerated medication in the face of well-being is one of the challenges confronting clinicians involved in improving the cardiovascular morbidity and mortality caused by high blood pressure (BP). If untreated, hypertension has serious consequences, including renal disease, myocardial infarction (MI), and cerebrovascular accident. However, many patients do not receive sufficiently aggressive management.

Definition

There is no natural cut-off between normal and high BP. As a result, many threshold values for treatment have been proposed. Table 1 provides a synthesis of guidelines from the major bodies. Accurate BP measurements are complicated by several factors. For example, there is an approximately 12/7 mm Hg difference between BP measurements taken in the clinic and those taken at home – and in many patients it can be significantly more. Similarly, measurements in the clinic cannot control for a large element of random biological variation, diurnal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Clinic measurement (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Home measurement (mm Hg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optimal control</td>
<td>&lt;140/85</td>
<td>&lt;130/80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild hypertension</td>
<td>140–150/90–100</td>
<td>135–145/85–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate hypertension</td>
<td>150–170/100–110</td>
<td>145–165/95–105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe hypertension</td>
<td>&gt;170/110</td>
<td>&gt;165/105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Guidelines for threshold values between normal and high blood pressure.
variation, and variation due to chance stress (eg, stress due to being in a traffic jam on the way to the clinic). Consequently, it is recommended that at least three readings are taken.

The annual risk of death from cardiovascular disease (including stroke) or coronary artery disease can be calculated from the European Society of Cardiology tables or Framingham risk tables. Some bodies recommend that mild hypertensives should only be treated if their cardiovascular risk exceeds 2% per year. This consideration of individual risk is welcome, since until recently most clinical trials have involved head-to-head comparisons of monotherapy, whereas in practice most patients require combination therapy.

**Causes**

No cause is identified in 95% of hypertension patients. However, awareness of treatable causes is important, especially in younger patients in whom there is a higher probability of the hypertension being secondary to some other cause. Causes of secondary hypertension are outlined in Table 2.

**Assessment**

**History**

History-taking is straightforward since, in most cases, hypertension is asymptomatic. However, symptoms can include headaches, transient ischemic attacks, mild visual disturbances, epistaxes, exertional dyspnea (if heart failure has developed), angina, claudication, weight gain (in Cushing’s syndrome), nocturia, and hematuria (with renal disease).

A full drug history is important and must include pharmacologically active preparations such as the combined contraceptive pill and herbal remedies, which are often not regarded by patients as drugs. Other important medications are steroids, sympathomimetics (eg, in cold cures), and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, which can reduce the antihypertensive effect of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs) and β-blockers.

As with any cardiovascular disease, risk factors should be especially well documented. As full a family tree as possible should be drawn to document hypertension, diabetes, or early cardiac death. A history of smoking and physical activity should also be taken. More specific to hypertension, caffeine and alcohol intake should be recorded and some insight into diet and lifestyle stress should be acquired.
Examination
The physical examination has three specific objectives:

- documenting an accurate BP
- excluding possible secondary causes
- quantifying end-organ damage

The BP should be measured in both arms, with the arm and manometer at the patient’s heart level. Readings should be taken manually in a standardized way (most clinical trials use Korotkoff I and V – from the first sound heard to the complete disappearance of sounds). The use of a large-diameter cuff is essential in those with large arms.

### Causes of secondary hypertension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Renal</th>
<th>Endocrine</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Renal artery stenosis</td>
<td>Cushing’s syndrome</td>
<td>Obstructive sleep apnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycystic kidney disease</td>
<td>Conn’s syndrome</td>
<td>Aortic coarctation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic reflux nephropathy</td>
<td>Pheochromocytoma</td>
<td>Pre-eclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic glomerulonephritis</td>
<td>Acromegaly</td>
<td>Drugs (combined oral contraceptive pill, cyclosporin, steroids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyarteritis nodosa</td>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
<td>CNS disturbances (raised intracranial pressure, familial dysautonomia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic sclerosis</td>
<td>Polycystic ovarian syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolic syndrome (diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, obesity)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Causes of secondary hypertension. CNS: central nervous system.
The general appearance of the patient may suggest Cushing’s syndrome, a thyroid disorder, polycystic ovarian disease, sleep apnea, or acromegaly. All peripheral pulses should be taken to screen for vascular disease, but special attention should be paid, especially in young people, to radiofemoral delay (diminished and late pulses in the femoral arteries), which suggests aortic coarctation. If positive, the BP should be measured in all four limbs. Auscultation should also be carried out over the aorta and renal arteries for bruits suggestive of stenosis. Abdominal examination may reveal palpable kidneys in polycystic disease or a pheochromocytoma.

End-organ damage can be detected by palpation of the apex beat, detection of bibasal crackles, and examination of the fundi. Diagnosis of hypertensive retinopathy is based on a four-stage grading system, as outlined in Table 3.

**Investigations**

Investigations are aimed at diagnosing rare secondary causes and quantifying end-organ damage.

Only electrolytes, creatinine, fasting glucose, and lipids should be requested in every patient. A low potassium and raised sodium level suggests hyperaldosteronism – either primary (Conn’s syndrome) or secondary to renal artery stenosis. This should prompt measurement of renin and aldosterone levels. It should be noted that the potassium level is normal in 50% of cases of primary hyperaldosteronism.

Raised calcium levels suggest possible hyperparathyroidism. If the symptoms suggest a thyroid problem, thyroid function should be tested. A low threshold should be adopted for the following:

- renal ultrasound
- urine microscopy (for casts and cells – glomerulonephritis)
- urine samples for testing:
  - catecholamine metabolites (three samples, one every 24 hours, required in acid bottles)
  - urinary free cortisol (one sample in a plain bottle – this can also be used for glomerular filtration rate and 24-hour protein tests)

Once hypertension has caused end-organ damage, the risks associated with any given level of BP are higher. Evidence of end-organ damage should therefore be sought in all patients. Dip-stick urinalysis, tests for urea and electrolytes, and a renal ultrasound can reveal renal insufficiency. Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) can be readily detected by electrocardiography or echocardiography (a chest x-ray...
is rarely necessary). Hypertension with LVH carries a particularly poor prognosis (the 5-year mortality is around 30%–40%) and is a powerful predictor of cardiovascular and all-cause mortality.

A useful tool, both for generalists and specialists, is the 24-hour ambulatory BP recording. It is particularly useful when clinic measurements show variability, with resistant hypertension, or most commonly to diagnose “white coat” hypertension. An ambulatory BP measurement (ABPM) is not required for those who are at high risk already, either because of target organ damage or cardiovascular complications. Such patients can be treated on the basis of clinic measurements. Equally, an evidence-based approach suggests that those with mild hypertension, no target organ damage, and low estimated risk may be left untreated (but followed) without ABPM.

**Management**

Many randomized controlled trials have shown that BP reduction prevents the complications of hypertension. Early trials showed a significant improvement in the risk of stroke, but little or no reduction in coronary heart disease (CHD) events. Later trials, particularly those in the elderly, have also shown a reduction in CHD events, although the benefit is not as great as observational studies predicted. A summary of hypertensive treatments is shown in Table 4.

**Lifestyle change**

Lifestyle changes are important in the management of patients with hypertension and can be used alone during an initial period for those with mild hypertension and low risk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Arteriolar narrowing and tortuosity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increased light reflex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Silver wiring”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Arteriovenous nipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Cotton-wool “exudates”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flame and blot hemorrhages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Papilledema</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 3.* Stages of hypertensive retinopathy (Keith–Wagener classification).
Increasing fruit and vegetable intake can improve BP via an effect on potassium; in combination with a low-fat diet, this can reduce BP by up to 11/6 mm Hg. In addition, weight loss is associated with an approximately 2.5/1.5 mm Hg drop for each kilogram lost. Specific advice on abstaining from adding salt to food – during cooking and at the table – should be given to reduce salt intake to 1 teaspoon per day. Foods such as bread, stock cubes, and breakfast cereals are often surprisingly high in salt. Reducing salt intake can cut BP by approximately 5/3 mm Hg. Alcohol, particularly when taken in a binge pattern, is associated with increased risk. The current American Heart Association guidelines state: “If an individual chooses to consume alcohol, the limit should be one drink [ie, half a pint of beer, one glass of wine, or one short drink] a day for women and two drinks a day for men. People who do not normally drink alcohol should not begin drinking.” Regular exercise (walking rather than weight training), stopping smoking, and limiting caffeine intake can all assist in lowering BP and may independently reduce cardiac risk.

**Pharmacotherapy**

In most patients, altering lifestyle factors is not enough. For these people, there is the difficult balance of pharmacotherapy. Fewer than half of all hypertensive patients can be controlled on monotherapy, whilst one third require three or more drugs. Knowledge of the mechanisms of action of antihypertensives is important as it allows rational combinations to be chosen based on complementary mechanisms of action.

There are four major groups of drug treatments for hypertension and several less frequently used classes. The sites of action of these antihypertensive agents are shown in Figure 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Relative risk ▼</th>
<th>Organ protection</th>
<th>Prognosis/improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle change</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuretic</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-blocker</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACE inhibitor</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca²⁺ antagonist</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiotensin receptor blocker</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha-blocker</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4. Summary of hypertensive treatment. ACE: angiotensin-converting enzyme. +/-: effect is unclear.
Beta-blockers

Beta-adrenoreceptor blockers have been used for many decades in the treatment of hypertension and are one of the few classes of agents that have been proven to reduce mortality. They work by reducing cardiac output via negative inotropic and chronotropic actions. In addition, they block sympathetic nervous system stimulation of renin release by juxtaglomerular cells. As with all medications, their
use is limited primarily by adverse effects. Asthma is generally considered to be an absolute contraindication, even with agents selective for the cardiovascular system ($\beta_1$-receptors). Peripheral vascular disease and bradycardia are relative contraindications. In susceptible patients, heart block and heart failure may be initiated.

The most commonly reported adverse effect is lethargy, and nightmares can occur with lipid-soluble $\beta$-blockers. As with all antihypertensives, erectile dysfunction (ED) is a problem. The best guide as to whether ED is iatrogenic is to determine whether the symptoms appeared suddenly. Nevertheless, $\beta$-blockers have significant advantages in patients with coexistent angina and anxiety, and also after MI.

Diuretics
Thiazide diuretics, such as bendrofluazide, are another class of agent for which randomized controlled trial evidence indicates an improvement in survival, and should be the first-line drug in the elderly and in those with systolic hypertension. They work by inhibiting NaCl reabsorption in the distal tubule. This initially leads to an increase in Na$^+$ loss and a reduction in plasma volume. However, the plasma volume soon recovers, leaving a reduced total peripheral resistance, for which the mechanism is unknown. Thiazide diuretics are widely used and very cheap, with a moderate side-effect profile (most commonly hypokalemia, dyslipidemia, and gout). Potassium levels should be checked regularly.

Loop diuretics have a role to play in the place of thiazides when renal function is compromised (creatinine $>$180 $\mu$mol/L or 2 mg/dL) and on a short-term basis, in addition to thiazides, in resistant hypertension, where a significant proportion of patients suffer plasma volume overload.

Calcium-channel blockers
A large number of calcium-channel blockers have been developed and there is good evidence of their ability to reduce BP. There are three subclasses: the dihydropyridines (nifedipine-like), the phenylalkylamine derivatives (verapamil), and the benzothiazepines (diltiazem). All work by blocking the entry of calcium into the smooth muscle cells of resistance vessels, thereby causing vasodilatation. Dihydropyridines cause vasodilatation without the bradycardic and negatively inotropic effects of diltiazem and verapamil (which limits the use of the latter agents to patients with normal left ventricular function) – so a simpler classification is “rate-limiting” and “non-rate-limiting”. Short-acting dihydropyridines have become unpopular following reports of increased risk of MI at high doses. Longer-acting calcium-channel blockers are useful antihypertensives, especially as they are lipid-neutral. Side effects include ankle edema, headache, and flushing.
Renin/angiotensin system antagonists
Angiotensin is a potent vasoconstrictor, but also increases activity of the sympathetic nervous system by both central and peripheral mechanisms. Fortunately, the renin–angiotensin system provides a series of targets for pharmacological attack by ACEIs, angiotensin type 1 receptor blockers (ARBs), and aldosterone antagonists (spironolactone). ACEIs and ARBs tend to be well tolerated and have few contraindications, the most important of which is renal artery stenosis. It is important to monitor renal function and potassium levels during initiation and maintenance of these agents. ACEIs are contraindicated in women of child-bearing potential and may cause a troublesome cough through their inhibition of the enzyme responsible for bradykinin degradation. First-dose hypotension can be a problem in elderly patients on diuretics, although newer, longer-acting formulations have reduced this concern. ACEIs are lipid-neutral, improve insulin resistance, and may be able to induce regression of LVH.

Alpha-adrenoceptor antagonists
Alpha1-antagonists (such as doxazosin and prazosin) are becoming more widely used in the treatment of hypertension. They have a good side-effect profile (palpitations and occasional postural hypotension). In addition, they are reported to have beneficial effects on lipid profile and insulin resistance, and lack the negative effects on sexual potency of other antihypertensives, which is a particular advantage for diabetics. They work to reduce total peripheral resistance by blocking the sympathetic activation of α1-receptors on resistance vessels.

Centrally acting sympathomimetics
Clonidine and α-methyldopa, centrally acting α2-adrenoceptor agonists, were once popular choices, but are now less widely initiated outside specialist scenarios such as pre-eclampsia. They carry a risk of rebound hypertension on withdrawal.

Other vasodilators
Other vasodilators, such as hydralazine and the very potent minoxidil, are mostly used in resistant hypertension when standard agents fail. Use of the latter is generally restricted by unpleasant side effects such as hypertrichosis.

Imidazoline type 1 receptor agonists
The identification of imidazoline receptors has revealed that the effects of older agents on the central nervous system reflect a relatively nonspecific central site of action mediated primarily through α2-adrenoceptor agonism (see Figure 2). It seems that some of the adverse effects of these agents, which are also mediated through this pathway, can be avoided by the use of selective imidazoline type 1 receptor agents. Early results suggest these agents are well tolerated, with a dry mouth being the only frequently reported unwanted effect (13% at 3 weeks, 2% at 12 months).
Pharmacotherapy selection
In the absence of compelling reasons to choose other medications, the first-line choice should remain a β-blocker or thiazide diuretic. These are the drugs for which clear evidence of mortality reduction exists. In addition, they are generally well tolerated. There are good reasons to consider β-blockers first in younger people and thiazides first in older people. However, the majority of patients will require more than one drug, and the choice should be rational. Here, synergistic action is important (see Figure 2). Good combinations are:

- thiazides (which cause secondary hyperreninemia) and ACEIs or ARBs (which block it)
- β-blockers (which act to reduce renin release and cardiac output) and calcium-channel blockers (which cause vasodilatation – do not combine β-blockers with verapamil or diltiazem)

Following this, it is generally worth trying one of the other classes mentioned above. Treatment will be highly individualized depending on patient tolerance and efficacy, but some guidelines are outlined in Table 5. It is worth taking readings after each change of drug so that agents with no effect can be stopped.

Systolic versus diastolic hypertension
The question as to the relative importance of systolic and diastolic BP is common in the management of hypertension. For many years it was felt that as systolic hypertension was more common in the elderly it was an inevitable part of aging and arteriolar
Diuretics | β-blockers | ACE inhibitors
--- | --- | ---
Examples | Bendrofluazide, hydrochlorothiazide | Atenolol, bisoprolol | Lisinopril, ramipril
Particularly good in: | Elderly patients | The young, anxious patients | Diabetics
Contraindicated in: | Gout | Asthma, heart block | Pregnancy, renovascular disease

Angiotensin type 1 receptor antagonists | Calcium-channel blockers | α-blockers
--- | --- | ---
Examples | Losartan, valsartan | Amlodipine, felodipine | Doxazosin, prazosin
Particularly good in: | ACE cough | Isolated systolic HT | Lipid abnormalities
Contraindicated in: | Pregnancy, renovascular disease | – | Urinary incontinence

Table 5. Guidelines for hypertension pharmacotherapy. ACE: angiotensin-converting enzyme; HT: hypertension.

stiffening. As a result, the focus was primarily on diastolic BP. In fact, both systolic and diastolic BP predict mortality equally well. However, in the elderly population with predominantly systolic BP, recent evidence suggests it is not the absolute values of systolic or diastolic hypertension, but the difference between the two that predicts mortality best, i.e., the pulse pressure. This means that a patient with a BP of 160/80 mm Hg may be at higher risk than a patient with a BP of 160/90 mm Hg. This finding, which actually fits well with current thinking on reflected pressure waves in the stiffer arteries of older people, has little therapeutic relevance as yet because we do not have agents that preferentially improve pulse pressure. Thiazides and calcium-channel blockers reduce systolic hypertension more than diastolic, so these are the rational choices. However, the key for the future may be drugs that can restore vascular elasticity, and in this respect nitrates—which donate nitric oxide—are the most promising.

Special populations

**Elderly patients**

It is a myth that hypertension is “normal” in the elderly and they have less to lose because of a shorter life expectancy. In fact, the absolute benefit from treatment of the elderly is much greater than that for younger hypertensives because of their
larger absolute risk. However, it is true that the prevalence of hypertension is higher amongst the elderly. Optimum BP levels are the same for older people as they are for younger people, and evidence for treatment benefit extends until at least 80 years. Taking pulse pressure into account (see “Systolic versus diastolic hypertension”, above), the best agents are thiazide diuretics and long-acting dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers.

**Ethnic groups**
Afro-Caribbean blacks have a particularly high prevalence of hypertension and severe complications. Their presentation is unusual in that the renin–angiotensin system is often suppressed. As a result, β-blockers and ACEIs are unlikely to be successful as monotherapy in these patients. Diuretics, calcium-channel blockers, and salt restriction are all effective.

**Diabetics**
Hypertension is common in diabetics and plays a major role in the vascular complications of the disease. Recent studies have suggested there is more to gain from controlling hypertension in diabetics than there is in achieving normoglycemia. For this reason, particularly aggressive BP-lowering treatment is warranted in these patients. ACEIs, preferably combined with a thiazide diuretic, are the treatment of choice. Previous avoidance of β-blockers or thiazide diuretics because of possible worsening of glycemic control needs to be reassessed in light of this information. Most recent studies show that both groups of drugs can be safely administered in diabetics.

**Pregnancy**
Hypertension occurs in up to 10% of pregnancies. The key distinction is between chronic hypertension in a pregnant woman and pregnancy-induced hypertension (pre-eclampsia) – defined as a rise in BP of >30/15 mm Hg from early pregnancy. Little is known about which agents are truly safe in pregnancy, but methyldopa is generally considered first line, with calcium antagonists or hydralazine regarded secondarily. Labetalol is sometimes used in the third trimester. In addition, trials in pregnant women with pre-eclampsia have suggested that magnesium sulfate injections may reduce the risk of eclampsia developing by as much as half. ACEIs should be avoided.

**Erectile dysfunction**
ED is a common problem in hypertensives. It is common because it can be caused by both hypertension (via vascular disease) and its treatment. Differentiating the two from psychogenic causes is a challenge. However, it is made easier by taking a full history: ask about desire, morning erections, erections during masturbation, the exact timing of onset, life stress, sexual history, alcohol, and nonprescription
medication. Palpation of the penis for Peyronie’s disease and the testes for atrophy should be added to the routine examination. If ED clearly relates to one particular medication, it is worth trying alternatives. If ED remains resistant, then possible treatments are vacuum devices, intraurethral alprostadil, and sildenafil. Patients with more than three risk factors for coronary disease should have an exercise test before starting sildenafil.

**Generalist management**

Hypertension is one of the few cardiovascular conditions where, in theory, the generalist can manage the whole process. Because of the overwhelming likelihood that any given hypertensive patient will have “essential” hypertension, only a small number of routine investigations are warranted. These are:

- urine dipstick
- blood glucose, electrolyte, and creatinine levels
- total cholesterol to high-density lipoprotein ratio
- electrocardiography

However, in a young patient, a patient with severe hypertension without a family history, or with signs or symptoms suggesting a secondary cause, the full investigative program detailed above (see “Investigations”) should be instituted. This is normally done predominantly within a specialist center.

**Refer with confidence**

In practice, hypertension specialists tend to see patients from one of the following four categories:

- patients with resistant hypertension
- patients from special groups with hypertension, eg, pregnant women or young people
- patients with known secondary hypertension
- patients with possible accelerated hypertension (see below)

Most generalists would expect to try at least three agents and carry out basic investigations before referring the patient to a specialist for the management of resistant hypertension. Certainly, it would be unusual to make use of vasodilators in the community. However, in the special groups mentioned above, it would not be uncommon for the full work-up to be done from the beginning in a special center. Clearly, any suspicion of accelerated hypertension should result in immediate referral.
Basic science

BP is a normally distributed, polygenic trait. That is, an individual's BP results from the effects of many genes interacting with each other and the environment. Due in part to this, genetics has so far struggled to explain essential hypertension. However, early studies have suggested that up to 50% of variation within the general population could be explained by genetic factors. The experimental approach has involved studying affected sibling pairs and scanning the whole genome for chromosomal regions with higher levels of genetic marker similarity.

Selectively bred animal models have also been used to study hypertension. Despite much effort, the only mutations that have been convincingly shown to be associated with hypertension are those of the ACE gene, and these gene polymorphisms are more strongly associated with atherosclerotic disease than hypertension.

The role of the sympathetic nervous system in hypertension has been debated over many years. Most agree that, together with inadequate salt excretion, it plays an important initiating role (validating the choice of β-blockers as a first-line agent in young hypertensives). However, there is significant controversy as to its continuing role. The prevalent view is that the sympathetic nervous system plays only a minor part in chronic hypertension, and recent studies showing the benefit of ARBs over β-blockers reinforce this.

Resistant hypertension

Failure to reduce BP to <140/90 mm Hg with three or more drugs qualifies the patient as “resistant”. Resistant hypertensives commonly suffer plasma volume expansion, despite the absence of clinical signs. In this situation, a more aggressive diuretic therapy can achieve targets where other combinations have failed to do so. Secondary causes are common in resistant hypertensives – they should be referred to a specialist to ensure a full diagnostic work-up. Apparent therapeutic failure could be due to noncompliance; many patients who have been prescribed several different tablets for an asymptomatic condition respond by not taking all of the tablets as directed. Therefore, before altering the medication, determine whether the patient is actually taking it.

Malignant (or accelerated phase) hypertension

In about 1% of patients with hypertension, the condition follows an accelerated course. BP is markedly raised (diastolic >130 mm Hg) and is associated with grade III–IV retinopathy. There may be encephalopathy (headache, confusion, visual disturbance, seizures, and coma), cardiac failure, and rapidly deteriorating renal function. The vascular lesion associated with malignant hypertension is fibrinoid necrosis of the walls of small arteries and arterioles. The prognosis is very
poor: untreated, 90% of patients die within 1 year, and even with treatment the 5-year survival rate is only 60%.

Malignant hypertension is a medical emergency that requires immediate therapy. However, the fall in BP should be controlled and carefully monitored as cerebral and myocardial perfusion can become compromised, which could lead to infarction (an initial target diastolic BP should be around 100–110 mm Hg). The reduction in BP is achieved with parenteral agents, such as nitroprusside or labetalol, ideally with intra-arterial BP monitoring. If a pheochromocytoma is suspected, drugs such as phenoxybenzamine or phentolamine (α-adrenergic blockers) should be used first. Once the acute episode has been successfully treated, the BP can be further titrated down over the following weeks.

**Further reading**


Chapter 7
Heart failure

Background

The survival rate for myocardial infarction (MI) has greatly increased in recent years due to the success of thrombolysis and primary angioplasty. However, the ensuing epidemic of heart failure has created a major public health problem. Data from the UK suggest that heart failure affects approximately 2% of the population. Furthermore, the prognosis for chronic heart failure (CHF) is poor: a patient admitted to hospital with pulmonary edema has a poorer prognosis (the 5-year mortality rate is around 50%) than a patient presenting with a carcinoma in any organ other than the lung.

The many causes of heart failure (see Table 1) operate through the central mechanism of reduced ventricular function. As a consequence, the heart is unable to perfuse the tissues adequately. The resulting clinical syndrome (see Table 2) can be explained by compensatory measures, such as cardiac hypertrophy and activation of the sympathetic nervous system and the renin–angiotensin system.

Heart failure is categorized as either systolic or diastolic. Systolic dysfunction is due to poor left ventricular (LV) contraction, usually expressed as ejection fraction (EF). Heart failure patients with diastolic dysfunction (more common in the elderly) have normal LV ejection fraction; the defect seems to lie in relaxation of the left ventricle and is associated with delayed filling. For the generalist, one clue to diastolic dysfunction lies in the chest x-ray (CXR), which can show signs of congestion without significant LV dilatation. However, echocardiography is required for a firm diagnosis (see Chapter 4, Understanding the echocardiogram).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of heart failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ischemic heart disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic or mitral regurgitation (volume stress)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic or mitral stenosis (pressure stress)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrictive pericarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol excess</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Causes of heart failure.
System | Change
--- | ---
Heart | Left ventricular hypertrophy
 | Left ventricular dilatation
 | Changes in calcium-cycling proteins
 | Switch to fetal isoforms of contractile proteins
 | Atrial natriuretic peptide release
 | Brain natriuretic peptide release
 | Release of proinflammatory cytokines (eg, TNF)
Lungs | Excessive ventilation
 | Increased dead space
Kidneys | Renin release
 | Erythropoietin release
 | Decrease in glomerular filtration rate
 | Sodium and water retention
Posterior pituitary | Antidiuretic hormone (vasopressin) release
Adrenal glands | Aldosterone increase
 | Catecholamine release
Autonomic nervous system | Activation of sympathetic system
Arteries | Vasoconstriction
 | Endothelin release
Skeletal muscles | Endothelial dysfunction
 | Changes to metabolism
 | Wasting
 | Release of proinflammatory cytokines (eg, TNF)

Table 2. The multiorgan symptoms of heart failure. TNF: tumor necrosis factor.

Pathophysiology

The approach to heart failure has changed enormously over the past few years (see Figure 1). Earlier thinking focused on inadequate pump function and the accepted therapeutic wisdom was to bolster it with β-agonist inotropes. The idea of treating heart failure by blocking the sympathetic nervous system would have been regarded as heretical and dangerous. However, it has now been realized that most CHF pathology is a result of the body’s own compensatory mechanisms (see Figure 2) and that interrupting these neurohumoral pathways achieves more than attempting to “overdrive” the failing heart. The exception is acute decompensation (acute heart failure, pulmonary edema, cardiogenic shock), where the focus is on short-term survival; although the primary aim is still the reduction of preload and
afterload using diuretics and vasodilators, inotropes in the form of β-agonists are also used.

**Clinical history and examination**

The hallmark of heart failure is dyspnea. The classic combination of raised jugular venous pressure (JVP), peripheral edema, palpable liver, basal crepitations, tachycardia, and a third heart sound is well known. Orthopnea (shortness of breath when lying flat) and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (acute nocturnal shortness of breath) are both manifestations of decompensation of ventricular function – precipitated by diurnal susceptibility and increased venous return resulting from adoption of the supine position.

In an elderly person, the cause of acute shortness of breath can often be difficult to diagnose, and the chest may reveal nothing but coarse breath sounds throughout. In this situation, two factors are helpful: the JVP and overt sympathetic overactivation (cold peripheries and profuse sweating).
Investigations

Electrocardiography
The electrocardiogram of a patient with heart failure often shows LV hypertrophy (LVH). This may show a “strain” pattern (LVH plus ST depression), most commonly in the lateral chest leads. Arrhythmias are also common in heart failure.

Chest x-ray
Classic signs on CXRs are common only for acute heart failure. Typically, some of the following signs are seen (see Figure 3):

- cardiomegaly (see Figure 4)
- upper lobe blood diversion
- “bat’s wing” alveolar edema
- pleural effusions
- Kerley B lines (lymphatics)
Echocardiography
This is the investigation of choice and can identify and quantify LVH and dysfunction (both systolic and diastolic) as well as examine causes of heart failure, such as valve abnormalities.

Blood tests
The measurement of natriuretic peptides for the diagnosis of heart failure is not yet routine. However, other blood tests can contribute to the clinical picture. The sodium concentration is often low (<130 mmol/L, despite high total body sodium) as a result of dilution and is a strong prognostic indicator. The potassium level is altered by many of the therapeutic agents and should be kept in the mid to high normal range (4.25–5 mmol/L) to minimize the risk of arrhythmia. If the pulse is of full volume, investigative blood tests for anemia and thyroid function should be carried out. If echo suggests restrictive cardiomyopathy, further tests can be carried out for iron storage disease, amyloidosis, or sarcoidosis.

Figure 3. (a) Classic signs of acute heart failure that can be seen on a chest x-ray of left ventricular failure. (b) Pleural effusion on a chest x-ray.
Management: acute heart failure

The approach to the management of acute decompensation is different from that to CHF. Acute pulmonary edema should be managed by:

- sitting the patient up
- giving high-flow oxygen
- giving diamorphine (2.5–5 mg intravenous [IV])
- giving nitrates (sublingual at first, then isosorbide mononitrate 2–10 mg/hour IV)
- giving loop diuretics (eg, furosemide [frusemide] 40–80 mg slow IV)

Blood pressure is a key measurement and should be considered when deciding the rate of a nitrate infusion or whether to use β-agonists. If the systolic blood pressure drops below 100 mm Hg, consideration should be given to replacing the nitrate infusion with one containing dobutamine (2–10 μg/kg/min). Although the effect of an IV diuretic can often be dramatic (probably due to an early effect on pulmonary venous dilatation), nitrates are preferred because, in addition to decreasing preload, they also decrease peripheral resistance and do not reduce cardiac output.

It is also important to take the precipitating factor into account. If, for example, a patient is in atrial fibrillation, slowing the ventricular rate may be more effective than a combination of more general measures. Similarly, if a patient has suffered an MI then thrombolysis or intervention may be the key to their recovery.
Management: cardiogenic shock

Cardiogenic shock, which has a 90% mortality rate, is the most severe form of acute heart failure. It is diagnosed when acute heart failure and hypotension are resistant to the measures described above and there is evidence of tissue hypoxia. Treatment, which should be in the coronary care unit of a specialist center, involves inotrope support, invasive monitoring equipment, intra-aortic balloon pumping, and, in the setting of MI, cardiac catheterization.

Intra-aortic balloon pump counterpulsation

Intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP) counterpulsation was developed in the early 1960s. A balloon is inserted, via the femoral artery, into the descending aorta (see Figure 5). Using electrocardiography for synchronization, the balloon is almost instantaneously, automatically inflated with helium at the onset of diastole, then deflated just prior to systole. This serves a dual purpose:

- it improves coronary blood flow by increasing the perfusion pressure in the ascending aorta during diastole
- it encourages systemic perfusion by reducing impedance to ventricular ejection at the point of balloon deflation (it creates a negative pressure which helps to “suck” the blood out)

Contraindications to IABP include severe aortic regurgitation and aortic dissection.

Figure 5. (a) Insertion of an intra-aortic balloon pump and (b) the corresponding arterial pressure waveform.
Management: chronic heart failure

The chronic form of heart failure is a condition that most generalists treat every day. When referring these patients, it is useful to classify the severity of heart failure. This is facilitated by a very simple scale: the New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification (see Table 3). It is straightforward and provides a common language that is understood by cardiologists worldwide.

### Diagnosis and assessment

The initial diagnosis and assessment of the severity and progression of CHF can be made using echo and exercise testing with gas analysis. The most commonly used echo measure is the EF. This is rated as:

- 45%–70%, normal
- 35%–45%, mildly impaired
- 25%–35%, moderately impaired
- <25%, severely impaired
- <15%, end-stage/transplant candidates
- 5% is compatible with life, but not long life

The single best exercise-testing measurement is the maximum rate of oxygen consumption (VO₂ max). In a situation where cardiac and respiratory causes of dyspnea coexist, exercise testing with gas analysis can be particularly useful in discerning which is the greater problem.

### Treatment

The first step in the management of CHF is patient education. It is easy for physicians to forget (since they use the term every day) that, to most patients, heart “failure”

---

**Table 3.** The New York Heart Association functional classification of chronic heart failure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>No limitation of physical activity. No shortness of breath, fatigue, or heart palpitations with ordinary physical activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Slight limitation of physical activity. Shortness of breath, fatigue, or heart palpitations with ordinary physical activity, but patients are comfortable at rest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Marked limitation of activity. Shortness of breath, fatigue, or heart palpitations with less than ordinary physical activity, but patients are comfortable at rest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Severe to complete limitation of activity. Shortness of breath, fatigue, or heart palpitations with any physical exertion and symptoms appear even at rest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sounds significantly worse than “myocardial infarction”, “heart attack”, or even “cardiac arrest”. Educating patients about their condition – by giving them information about avoiding excessive salt intake and teaching them how to use their daily weight to monitor fluid balance – will pay dividends in long-term management.

Spironolactone, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs), and β-blockers are the only agents that have been shown to reduce heart failure mortality, and all are now widely used in the community. However, their use requires caution. Although not strictly necessary, most practitioners use short-acting preparations (eg, captopril, metoprolol) when first starting these treatments.

**Diuretics**

Although diuretics are the mainstay of CHF management, their main role is in symptom control – they may even increase neurohumoral activation. An approach that allows patients to take control of their own diuretic dosage and alter it according to their daily weight (in much the same way as diabetics alter their insulin dosage) may be successful in many patients. It is recommended that diuretics should always be used with an ACEI. In addition, the skillful use of diuretics with complementary actions (see Figure 6, Tables 4 and 5) can aid diuresis and even avoid hospital admission if the balance is upset. Given the choice between increasing the dose of a loop diuretic or adding another agent, it is usually best to add another agent.

Spironolactone has been shown to improve outcomes in stage III–IV heart failure with an effect equivalent to that of ACE inhibition (25 mg spironolactone has a beneficial effect on remodeling, but essentially no effect on potassium levels and diuresis).

Metolazone is a thiazide-like diuretic that has a powerful synergistic action with loop diuretics, so should be used in the community only as a last resort, for short periods, and be accompanied by daily electrolyte checks.
Pulmonary edema was first explained by Henry Welch, who showed that it could be reproduced by obstructing the outflow of the left ventricle. However, the first definition of heart failure was provided by Theophile Bonet (1620–1689), who published clinico-pathological studies linking the effects of valvular disease and cardiac chamber size to the clinical features of dyspnea and edema.

**Figure 6.** The mechanism of action of diuretics in chronic heart failure management.
Table 4. Diuretics used in the treatment of heart failure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Mechanism of action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loop diuretics</td>
<td>Furosemide (frusemide),</td>
<td>Inhibit triporter pump in thick ascending loop of Henle, thus inhibiting Na⁺ and Cl⁻ reabsorption, which leads to diuresis and potentially hypokalemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bumetanide, torasemide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiazide diuretics</td>
<td>Bendrofluazide, hydrochlorothiazide</td>
<td>Inhibit NaCl reabsorption in the distal tubule. The greater Na⁺ load in the distal tubule stimulates Na⁺ exchange with K⁺ and H⁺, causing hypokalemia and metabolic alkalosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metolazone</td>
<td>Particularly potent diuretic, especially when combined with a loop diuretic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium-sparing diuretics</td>
<td>Amiloride</td>
<td>Blocks Na⁺ channels in the distal nephron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spironolactone</td>
<td>Aldosterone antagonist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs) were the first agents shown to reduce mortality in heart failure. Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) are currently reserved for those patients with an ACE cough. Guidelines for starting ACEIs are outlined in Table 6.

### Beta-blockers

Much of the early work on β-blockers used carvedilol – a nonselective β-blocker, α-antagonist, and antioxidant. However, although its significant effect appeared to result from β-blockade resulting in many different β-blocking agents being used, recent trials have suggested there may be effects over and above that of β-blockade. Beneficial effects of β-blockade include a reduction in heart rate (which increases...
myocardial perfusion), regression of LVH (probably related to inhibition of the deleterious effects of excess catecholamines), and a reduction in sudden death (probably related to a reduction in ventricular fibrillation – 50% of heart failure deaths are due to arrhythmia).

**Digoxin**

Digoxin has perhaps the longest history of any of the treatments for heart failure. However, being a positive inotrope, it occupies a controversial place overarching the old and new paradigms for the treatment of sinus rhythm heart failure. It works by increasing cellular calcium via inhibition of Na⁺/K⁺ ATPase and consequent reduction of Ca²⁺ extrusion via Na⁺/Ca²⁺ exchange (see Figure 7). As K⁺ “competes” with digoxin at the ATPase site, digoxin can become toxic in hypokalemic patients. Symptoms of digoxin toxicity are gastrointestinal upset and (more rarely) visual disturbances and headache. However, despite its widespread use, there have been no large, prospective, placebo-controlled trials to determine the efficacy of digoxin in reducing mortality (although it has been shown to reduce hospital admissions).

**Hydralazine and nitrates**

The vasodilator combination of hydralazine (up to 300 mg) and nitrates (160 mg isosorbide dinitrate) has been tested with digoxin and diuretics in several large trials and has been associated with mortality reductions in heart failure. However, the advent of ARBs is likely to offer a better alternative to ACEIs than this drug combination.
Future directions

Areas of controversy still exist in the management of CHF. For example, aspirin is known to be effective as an aid to secondary prevention of coronary artery disease. However, it can reduce the efficacy of ACEIs. Also, despite the high rate of heart failure deaths due to arrhythmia (50%), amiodarone is the only antiarrhythmic (so far) that has been shown to reduce mortality.

New agents currently being investigated in trials include:

- calcium sensitizers (increase contractile response to intracellular Ca^{2+})
- endothelin antagonists (there are increased levels of endothelin – a potent vasoconstrictor – in heart failure); results of all recent trials have been negative or neutral at best
- TNF-α antibodies; recent trials all produced negative results
- neutral endopeptidase inhibitors (neutral endopeptidase breaks down atrial natriuretic peptide and brain natriuretic peptide – peptides with diuretic, natriuretic, and vasodilator properties)

Heart failure treatments, according to NYHA classification, are outlined in Table 7.

**Nonpharmacotherapies**

Recent evidence suggests that individualized exercise training programs can be beneficial in stable, mild to moderate heart failure. Like most other aspects of the treatment of heart failure, today’s advice (exercise) is the opposite of that from 30 years ago (bed rest).

---

Revascularization of patients with heart failure is being considered increasingly as it is realized that chronic LV dysfunction does not necessarily mean permanent or irreversible cell damage. Myocardium that has suffered low-level ischemia and no longer contributes significantly to ventricular function (hibernating myocardium) remains viable, and therefore potentially rescuable. It can be detected by cardiovascular magnetic resonance imaging, perfusion imaging, low-dose dobutamine stress echo, or PET scanning (perfusion metabolism mismatch).

Many patients with systolic heart failure exhibit significant intra- or interventricular conduction delays (IVCDs) that cause ventricular dysynchrony, recognized by a wide QRS complex on the ECG (typically, a left bundle branch block morphology). Ventricular dysynchrony has several important consequences for cardiac performance, which include abnormal interventricular septal wall motion, reduced diastolic filling time, and prolonged mitral regurgitation duration. In addition, there is a proportional increase in mortality with increasing QRS duration. Cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT) provides atrial-synchronized, biventricular pacing using standard pacing technology combined with a special third lead. This third lead is implanted via the coronary sinus and positioned in a cardiac vein to sense and pace the left ventricle. Following a sensed atrial contraction, both ventricles are stimulated to contract simultaneously. The resulting resynchronization of ventricular contraction reduces mitral regurgitation and optimizes left ventricular filling, thereby improving cardiac function.

Transplantation and ventricular assist devices are options for end-stage disease. Local availability and guidelines vary. Indications are:

- severe LV dysfunction (eg, EF <20% as demonstrated by radionuclide ventriculography)
- VO₂ max <14 mL/kg/min (patients with values above this tend to have a better prognosis without surgery)
Contraindications center on comorbidities, eg, vasculopathy, diabetes mellitus with target-organ damage, or pulmonary hypertension. In addition, few centers will transplant patients over the age of 60 years.

Several studies have shown clear benefit from a multidisciplinary approach to heart failure treatment. Specialist nurses who visit patients in the community can significantly reduce the rate of hospitalization by helping with exercise, symptom control, and fluid balance, and by alerting the medical team early to any potential deterioration.

**Palliative care**

The very poor prognosis associated with heart failure begs the question of the availability of hospice care and end-of-life support for this population. The irony remains that while cancer patients receive end-of-life support and often report dyspnea as an equivalent problem to pain, many more heart failure patients whose chief symptom is dyspnea have a poorer prognosis and go unattended. The management of these patients is an area deserving of more investigation and analysis. For example, what is the place of drugs that are known to help symptoms but which might increase the risk of sudden death (eg, inotropes)? Does “dual-intent” apply? What are the wishes of the patient? As cardiology becomes more technological there is less focus on patients and more on their lesions and the tools used to treat them. Generalists are almost certainly better than cardiologists at practising holistic care.

Unfortunately, conventional drugs for the treatment of heart failure do not adequately control the most common symptoms of fatigue and dyspnea. The latter is the most common distressing symptom in refractory heart failure. Maintaining a very close control of plasma volume is facilitated by regular weighing and adjustment of diuresis, but this rarely provides full symptom control. Fortunately, relief is possible through the use of opiates. These drugs reduce preload and afterload, dampen the central respiratory drive, and relieve distress through a central narcotic action. Thus, they are well suited for use in this situation. Drawbacks, such as tolerance and dependence, should not deter their use as studies suggest that they are minimal in this setting. Physical dependence is inevitable, but only relevant in the case of discontinuation of therapy, in which case it can be managed by gradual withdrawal. Morphine can be given at a dose of 2.5 mg 4 hourly and as required, with the 4-hourly dose readjusted after 48 hours to take account of interim dosing. Control of constipation should always accompany chronic opioid treatment.
Further reading


Introduction

Arrhythmia is an area of cardiology often feared by generalists. This might be related to the inconsistent terminology used in different centers and countries; or perhaps because the most basic tool of diagnosis, the electrocardiogram (ECG), can at times seem the most esoteric. Whatever the reason, few feel completely comfortable when confronted with a patient with ongoing arrhythmia. Despite this, arrhythmia can be simply managed by asking the following question: is the patient compromised? This is the first and single most important question in the management of your patient. The answer will guide your next steps.

If the patient is not compromised – no pain, no dyspnea, normal blood pressure, and fully alert – you have some time. Take a short history and examination, get the patient monitored (preferably), and acquire a 12-lead ECG. The findings will help to make a diagnosis that will guide treatment. If a 12-lead ECG is not available, immediately refer the patient to somewhere that it can be performed.

If the patient is compromised – with pain, dyspnea, hypotension, and light headedness – this is an emergency and the patient needs an intravenous (IV) cannula inserted and a defibrillator brought in immediately. Treatment then depends on the diagnosis (see Table 1).

Clinical examination can help, whether an ECG is available or not. The key thing to remember is that there are few components in the electrical “wiring” of the heart (see Figure 1) and the pulse can only be fast or slow, regular or irregular. If an ECG is available, is the QRS complex narrow or broad? Broad (>0.12 seconds) is more likely to be ventricular tachycardia (VT) and will generally be more concerning than narrow, which suggests a high depolarization site and is likely to be supraventricular tachycardia (SVT).

Bradycardia

Bradycardia is defined as heart rate <60 bpm, regardless of the cause. However, this is not a particularly helpful definition as it is well known that elite athletes can have “normal” heart rates as low as 30 bpm. In general, bradycardia needs
attention if it is associated with symptoms, hemodynamic compromise, or is the substrate for escape rhythms. Symptoms associated with bradycardia include shortness of breath, fatigue, lethargy, nausea, mental confusion, dizziness, and presyncope or syncope. If there is hemodynamic compromise and interruption of cerebral perfusion is prolonged, grand mal seizures may result (Stokes–Adams attacks). The causes of bradycardia are outlined in Table 2.

Table 1. Possible diagnoses of an arrhythmic patient. AV: atrioventricular; ECG: electrocardiogram.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pulse</th>
<th>Most likely diagnosis</th>
<th>ECG to rule out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regular and slow (&lt;60 bpm)</td>
<td>Sinus rhythm</td>
<td>Complete heart block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Junctional rhythm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular and fast (&lt;150 bpm)</td>
<td>Atrial flutter with 2:1 AV block</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular and fast (&gt;150 bpm)</td>
<td>AV node re-entrant tachycardia</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular and fast</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation with rapid ventricular response</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular and slow</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation with controlled ventricular response</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1. A diagrammatic representation of the electrical “wiring” of the heart. AV: atrioventricular; SA: sinoatrial. Reproduced with permission from Elsevier Science (Hampton J. The ECG Made Easy. Churchill Livingstone, 2003).
Treatment
Acute bradycardia only requires treatment if it is associated with hemodynamic compromise or dangerous escape rhythms. This will most often be the case in the setting of inferior myocardial infarction (MI), but check the temperature! IV atropine at a dose of 500 μg can be administered and repeated up to a maximum cumulative dose of 3 mg. If this fails, there are two options.

(1) External pacing. This is a temporizing measure only. Most defibrillators have detachable modules to facilitate this. Attach electrode gels anteriorly and posteriorly and pace at 80 bpm. The procedure is distressing for the conscious patient and should be used with sedative analgesia.

(2) IV isoproterenol (isoprenaline) infusion. If the parasympathetic system is entirely blocked, the only alternative is to stimulate the sympathetic pathway. However, this is proarrhythmic and not without risk.

Sinus node dysfunction
Sinus node dysfunction (SND) is also known as tachycardia–bradycardia syndrome and sick sinus syndrome. These terms encompass a spectrum of disorders of cardiac conduction tissue that are not necessarily confined to the sinus node (eg, atrial conducting tissue and even the atrioventricular [AV] node). The cause is not entirely clear, but inflammation, degeneration, and fibrosis of the conducting tissue are characteristic. SND is most common in the elderly.

The spectrum of associated arrhythmias is diverse, but usually includes inappropriate sinus bradycardia, sinus pauses (>3 seconds) with junctional escape, sinus arrest (asystolic pause), atrial tachycardia, atrial flutter, and atrial fibrillation (AF). Commonly, there is alternating bradycardia–tachycardia with a normal sinus rate or bradycardia between attacks. Hence, the diagnostic landmarks

Table 2. Causes of bradycardia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of bradycardia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physiological</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Athletic bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drugs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Beta-blockers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rate-limiting calcium-channel blockers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Digoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Amiodarone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ischemia</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sinus node disease</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atrioventricular node disease</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abnormal vagal tone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carotid sinus hypersensitivity</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malignant vasovagal syndrome</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Raised intracranial pressure</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hypothyroidism</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hypothermia</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Arrhythmia

Causes of bradycardia

Table 2. Causes of bradycardia.
are palpitations (tachycardia), dizziness, and syncope (bradycardia), although the disease is often asymptomatic.

SND is diagnosed by a 12-lead ECG and Holter monitoring. Although there is no evidence of mortality benefit (SND does not seem to cause fatal asystolic arrest), consensus exists that a pacemaker (AAI, DDD – see p.135 for a description of the pacemaker codes) should be implanted if there is a clear relationship between bradycardia and cerebral symptoms in the absence of drugs – a diagnosis that may be difficult to secure. In addition, a pacemaker may be considered (AAI, DDD) when bradycardia is secondary to drug therapy necessary to limit tachycardia.

**Carotid sinus syndrome**

This term refers to hypersensitivity of the baroreceptor reflex, leading to bradycardia and hypotension. It is usually caused when pressure is applied to the neck around the area of the carotid sinus, eg, when shaving or by wearing a tight shirt collar. It can be predominantly cardioinhibitory (bradycardia, AV block) or vasodepressive (hypotension). Diagnosis is by ECG monitoring during carotid sinus massage. Patients with >3 seconds of asystole benefit from permanent dual-chamber pacing (DDI). Single-lead atrial pacing is contraindicated because it offers no protection against AV block. In patients with predominant vasodepressor syncope or mixed forms of the condition, pacing only prevents symptoms due to asystole or bradyarrhythmia; it does not prevent neurologic symptoms due to reflex hypotension.

**Syncope**

Syncope is defined as a sudden transient loss of consciousness and postural tone with spontaneous recovery. A careful diagnostic evaluation, though often difficult, is imperative in all patients. A vast variety of conditions may result in syncope, including any condition causing relative cerebral hypoxia for ≥10 seconds. It occurs as a result of low cardiac output and can be a consequence of mechanical, rhythm, and vascular disturbances, and noncardiac causes (see Table 3).

It should be kept in mind that generalized tonic/clonic movements can be the result of syncope, rather than the cause of it.

**Evaluation**

It can be difficult to identify the cause of syncope. Initial clinical evaluation should include supine and erect blood pressures and heart rate measurements. Blood glucose, serum electrolytes, hematocrit, and drug levels (if appropriate) should also be obtained. Assessment of a syncopeal event requires information from both the patient and a witness; the pattern can be helpful (see Table 4). A baseline 12-lead ECG may suggest possible causes such as ischemia, Wolff–Parkinson–White (WPW) syndrome,
or a prolonged QT interval. In most cases, it will be necessary to refer the patient for additional testing (see Figure 2). Additional testing may include the following.

- Documentation of a symptomatic arrhythmia may be achieved by Holter monitoring. However, if syncope is infrequent, event-recorder monitoring may be more helpful. These devices allow patients to turn the device on when the episode begins (or ends, facilitated by the use of a buffer), and thus record over a much greater period of time.
- An echocardiogram should be used to detect major structural abnormalities potentially associated with syncope (aortic stenosis, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, ischemia). Carotid sinus massage should be performed if bruits are absent.
- Before invasive electrophysiological testing, coronary artery disease should be excluded or treated. Electrophysiological testing is indicated whenever an arrhythmia is considered as a probable cause of syncope.
- Exercise testing may contribute to establishing a basis for syncope by revealing myocardial ischemia (substrate for ventricular tachyarrhythmias), catecholamine-sensitive tachycardias, exercise-induced AV block, and chronotropic incompetence (SND).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of disturbance</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td>Cardiac valvular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acute myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tamponade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pulmonary embolus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhythm</td>
<td>Sinus node dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular</td>
<td>Cerebrovascular disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neurally mediated vasodilatation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• malignant vasovagal syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• carotid sinus syncope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• drug-induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noncardiac causes</td>
<td>Central nervous system substrates, eg, epilepsy, tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolic/endocrine disturbances, eg, hypoglycemia, hyperventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Psychiatric disorders</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. Disturbances that can lead to syncope.
Malignant vasovagal syncope

In malignant vasovagal syncope, the sympathetic system is activated via a trigger, usually venous pooling, which forces vigorous contraction of a poorly filled ventricle. This stimulates the mechanoreceptors in the ventricular wall, which lead (via C fibers and the brainstem) to overactivation of the parasympathetic system, and thus bradycardia and hypotension. This reflex is named Bezold–Jarisch after those who first described it (see Figure 3).
Tilt-table testing
If malignant vasovagal syncope is suspected, the key investigation is upright tilt-table testing. This test is performed on a specially designed table with the patient initially in a supine position. He/she is then tilted upright to a maximum of 60°–80° in such a way as to avoid recruiting the postural muscles. This maximizes venous pooling. The patient is left in this position for up to 40 minutes.

The normal tilt-table response is a baroreceptor-mediated decrease in inhibitory drive to the vasomotor center, ie, vasoconstriction and an increase in heart rate and ventricular contractility. The test result is considered abnormal when symptomatic hypotension is reproduced (Bezold–Jarisch reflex).

Treatment
Therapy to prevent recurrent vasovagal syncope has included the use of β-blockers and vagolytics (eg, disopyramide).

Atrioventricular block
AV block occurs when the electrical impulse from the atria to the ventricles is delayed or blocked.
**First-degree AV block**
This is where there is a prolonged PR interval of >200 milliseconds (5 small squares; see Figure 4). No specific therapy is required and the prognosis is excellent. However, it can be a marker for an underlying problem such as myocarditis, MI, degenerative disease, or, most commonly, a drug effect (eg, tricyclic antidepressants).

**Second-degree AV block**
This is divided into two types:

- type I (Mobitz I or Wenckebach AV block)
- type II (Mobitz II AV block)

Type I occurs when there is a repeated pattern of progressive prolongation of the PR interval, which eventually results in the failure of conduction of one atrial beat (see Figure 5). The cause is usually benign, but it can be a marker for the same underlying cardiac problems as first-degree AV block. In most cases, treatment is unnecessary. Routine prophylactic permanent pacing is not recommended unless the patient is symptomatic with presyncope, recurrent syncope, or bradycardia that exacerbates congestive heart failure or angina.

In type II, most beats are conducted with a constant PR interval, but occasionally atrial depolarization is not followed by ventricular depolarization (see Figure 6). Type II is pathological and indicates disease of the conduction system distal to the AV node. It can frequently lead to complete AV block, causing Stokes–Adams attacks. Therefore, temporary and then permanent pacing (DDD) is indicated in most patients, even those who initially present without symptoms.

**Third-degree AV block (complete heart block)**
With complete heart block, there is complete dissociation of the P waves and QRS complexes (see Figure 7). The ventricular escape complexes are usually wide and occur at around 30–40 bpm. There is a significant risk of asystole and thus permanent pacing (DDD) is indicated, regardless of symptoms. Acquired AV block is most commonly due to ischemic heart disease or drug toxicity (in particular β-blockers, digitalis, and calcium-channel blockers).

**Bradyarrhythmia in atrial fibrillation**
In patients with intermittent or chronic AF, AV node dysfunction is not an uncommon finding. Clearly, this will be aggravated by many of the rate-limiting drugs given to control the ventricular rate. In these cases, consideration should be given to the implantation of a pacemaker to protect against bradycardia while still allowing pharmacological control of a rapid ventricular rate.
Figure 4. Electrocardiogram of first-degree atrioventricular block.

Figure 5. Electrocardiogram of type I second-degree atrioventricular block (Wenckebach).

Figure 6. Electrocardiogram of type II second-degree atrioventricular block (Mobitz II).

Figure 7. Electrocardiogram of third-degree atrioventricular block.
Bundle branch block

A problem in the bundle of His presents in an identical fashion to a combined block of both bundles, ie, complete heart block. However, a more common occurrence is an isolated left or right bundle branch block. These are usually distinct from any problem with AV conduction (ie, they usually coexist with normal sinus rhythm [SR]). The patterns of the ECG are characteristic, but highly variable; the hallmark is a wide QRS complex.

- In left bundle branch block (LBBB), the pattern is best detected in V6 where there is an “M” pattern, while in V1 there is a “W” pattern (see Figure 8).
- In right bundle branch block (RBBB), the pattern is best detected in V1 where there is an RSR complex, while in V6 there is a QRS complex (see Figure 8).

In fact, both LBBB and RBBB are found in the “normal” population. New LBBB is cause for concern, and if it can clearly be related to an acute episode of chest pain then it probably indicates MI. Both RBBB and LBBB probably indicate increased risk for cardiovascular disease; however, neither on its own is an indication for pacing.

Fascicular block

One confusing aspect of electrocardiology is the terminology used to describe blocks of the fascicles (see Figure 9). The confusion arises from the fact that the right bundle is included in the list of three fascicles:

- left anterior fascicle
- left posterior fascicle
- right bundle branch
Left anterior and left posterior fascicular block
Fascicular block causes axis deviation on the ECG. Therefore, left anterior hemiblock causes left axis deviation (see Figure 10), while left posterior hemiblock causes right axis deviation (see Figure 11).

Bifascicular block
The term “bifascicular block” refers to a block of any two of the three fascicles. Clearly, this should include LBBB (left anterior + left posterior); however, the term is usually reserved for:

- RBBB + left anterior hemiblock, ie, RBBB + left axis deviation
- RBBB + left posterior hemiblock, ie, RBBB + right axis deviation
  (the axis is usually normal in RBBB)

Bifascicular block is not in itself an indication for pacing. However, when combined with intermittent second- or third-degree block, a DDD pacemaker should be fitted.

Trifascicular block
Trifascicular block refers to a block of all three fascicles (but with intact AV conduction). It usually refers to LBBB + a long PR interval. Although trifascicular block is not strictly speaking an indication for permanent pacing, some centers carry this out on the basis that it must reflect extensive conducting tissue damage.
Nonspecific intraventricular conduction defect

Another term that is sometimes used is “nonspecific intraventricular conduction defect”. This usually refers to an abnormal ECG that does not clearly fit any of the patterns described above. The QRS complex will generally not be wide, but the waveform will be atypical. It is of unknown significance, but is likely to be benign.

Tachyarrhythmia

The general principle of patient management outlined at the beginning of this chapter holds true for patients suffering from tachyarrhythmia: is the patient compromised? And, as above, the use of an ECG will be critical when making the diagnosis. However, you will often be called to see a patient in the community where no ECG is available. In this situation, try to make a diagnosis based on the defibrillator monitor. Most patients with tachyarrhythmia will require referral, but making your own diagnosis can only help the situation. The key questions are:

- do the results show broad (>0.12 seconds) or narrow complexes?
- are they regular or irregular?

More sophisticated interpretation of the ECG is helpful, but the answers to these key questions will be sufficient to guide the immediate management (see Table 5).
Sinus tachycardia

Sinus tachycardia is usually a response to physiological stress such as exercise or anxiety, and it may be the result of an abnormally heightened sympathetic tone. Abnormal pathological causes include fever, hypotension, anemia, thyrotoxicosis, hypovolemia, pulmonary emboli, myocardial ischemia, and shock. Nicotine, caffeine, alcohol, and some medications (sympathetic agonists or parasympatholytic agents) are frequently the underlying cause of sinus tachycardia. The QRS complexes are preceded by P waves of normal morphology, duration, and axis. Sinus tachycardia alone does not require any treatment, but the underlying cause should be determined.

Atrial tachycardia

Atrial tachycardia can occur in the presence of cardiac or pulmonary disease at a rate varying from 140 to 240 bpm. P-wave morphology is generally different from that during SR, but the P–QRS relationship remains 1:1 (see Figure 12). Some atrial tachycardias are catecholamine sensitive; in this case, a β-blocker is appropriate therapy. Curative radiofrequency ablation of atrial tachycardia is effective in 70% of cases. For refractory cases, creation of complete heart block by radiofrequency catheter ablation with implantation of a permanent dual-chamber pacemaker provides control of the rate and avoids drug toxicity.
AV nodal re-entrant tachycardia (AVNRT) accounts for more than 70% of cases of paroxysmal SVT (see Figures 13 and 14). This is also termed “classic” SVT with fast (140–250 bpm) narrow complexes and no P waves. Initial management involves interventions to increase vagal tone. These should only be carried out on a monitored patient, and include:

- carotid sinus massage – apply firm pressure to one carotid artery at the level of the upper thyroid cartilage and move a small distance back and forth for up to 5 seconds (check for bruits first)
- Valsalva maneuver – the patient should take a deep breath, then attempt to exhale forcefully against a closed glottis for up to 15 seconds

### Table 5. Possible diagnoses of tachyarrhythmias based on the electrocardiogram.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shape of complex</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Irregular narrow complex</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atrial flutter (sawtooth pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multifocal atrial tachycardia (distinct P waves, but with different morphologies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular narrow complex</td>
<td>Sinus tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atrial flutter with constant AV block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AVNRT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accessory pathway re-entrant tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular broad complex</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation + LBBB/RBBB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation + other aberrant conduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular broad complex</td>
<td>Sinus tachycardia + LBBB/RBBB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atrial flutter with constant AV block + LBBB/RBBB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AV: atrioventricular; AVNRT: atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia; LBBB: left bundle branch block; RBBB: right bundle branch block.

Figure 12. Electrocardiogram of atrial tachycardia.

**Atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia**

AV nodal re-entrant tachycardia (AVNRT) accounts for more than 70% of cases of paroxysmal SVT (see Figures 13 and 14). This is also termed “classic” SVT with fast (140–250 bpm) narrow complexes and no P waves. Initial management involves interventions to increase vagal tone. These should only be carried out on a monitored patient, and include:

- carotid sinus massage – apply firm pressure to one carotid artery at the level of the upper thyroid cartilage and move a small distance back and forth for up to 5 seconds (check for bruits first)
- Valsalva maneuver – the patient should take a deep breath, then attempt to exhale forcefully against a closed glottis for up to 15 seconds
• diving reflex – this vestigial reflex, which allows marine animals to lower their metabolism when diving underwater, exists in humans and can increase vagal tone. Suddenly immerse the patient’s face in very cold water

In a number of patients, the tachycardia (ie, AVNRT) terminates spontaneously with these maneuvers. However, if it does not, you should consider an adenosine challenge. This procedure involves rapid IV injections of increasing doses of adenosine (3–16 mg). Adenosine has a very short half-life (10 seconds) and produces temporary AV block, which can interrupt re-entry. This procedure is also very useful diagnostically, as the transient AV block can unmask an underlying atrial rhythm.

The use of a short-acting β-blocker (eg, esmolol) or a calcium-channel blocker (eg, verapamil) has also been found to be safe and effective in terminating AVNRT. Verapamil is particularly useful in patients with asthma, in whom adenosine is contraindicated.

Symptomatic patients with frequent episodes of AVNRT can be considered for radiofrequency catheter ablation of the “slow” pathway; this can be successfully ablated in more than 95% of cases.

**Ventricular pre-excitation**
Pre-excitation is defined as an early depolarization of the ventricular myocardium that occurs prior to any conduction through the AV node. The most common condition in which this is seen is WPW syndrome, where there is an accessory AV
pathway called the bundle of Kent. The anomalous conducting system can be located anywhere around the mitral or tricuspid rings. Most WPW patients have no evidence of structural heart disease. In the majority of cases, there is only a single accessory connection and the electrophysiological properties of the anomalous pathway differ from those of the AV node. Conduction through the accessory connection is faster and is independent of the heart rate. Consequently, the ventricular myocardium is activated from two directions: through the normal system and through the accessory pathway. The resulting QRS complex is a product of fusion of the two distinct activation wavefronts. Since conduction over the accessory pathway is faster, the initial part of the QRS complex represents ventricular activation through this route (delta wave – see Figure 15).

Figure 14. Mechanisms of re-entrant tachycardia. AVN: atrioventricular node; AVNRT: atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia; SR: sinus rhythm; VT: ventricular tachycardia.
The medical treatment of acute arrhythmias in WPW syndrome depends on the type of tachycardia. ECG results can help to determine this. A narrow complex indicates that accessory pathway re-entry is occurring. Treatment should include vagal maneuvers and adenosine as above. A broad complex is likely to be seen when AF is present, and can be particularly dangerous in WPW syndrome. It is characterized by rapid, irregular, wide complexes and should be treated by immediate direct current (DC) cardioversion. Adenosine, verapamil, and digoxin are not appropriate treatments as they increase the possibility of VT.

Following acute therapy, radiofrequency catheter ablation can be used as a curative treatment for symptomatic patients with an accessory pathway. Pathways can be successfully ablated in more than 90% of all cases and the recurrence rate after successful ablation is approximately 8%–10%. Severe complications are rare, occurring in 2% of all cases.

**IN THE BEGINNING…**

Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome was first described by Frank Norman Wilson in 1915. Another case in a 19-year-old student was reported by Wedd in 1921, and Louis Wolff, John Parkinson, and Paul Dudley White alluded to these two descriptions when they described the disorder in 1930. The original article by these three authors contained an account of a form of bundle branch block in 11 healthy young adults who were subject to episodes of paroxysmal tachycardia. The relative contributions of the authors are uncertain. Wolff (1898–1972) and White (1886–1973) were both US cardiologists, while Parkinson (1885–1976) was an English physician: one patient had been seen at the London Hospital, while most of the others were examined in Boston. White was a giant of cardiology – he studied the ECG with Thomas Lewis and was a strong advocate of heart disease prevention through exercise, especially bicycle exercise. A bike path in Boston is named after him.
Ventricular tachycardia

In the acute situation, broad complex tachycardias present a diagnostic challenge because SVT with aberrant conduction can be difficult to distinguish from VT. As mentioned previously, the key question remains – is the patient compromised? Certain features on the ECG can help to distinguish VT from SVT (see Figure 16):

- a very broad QRS complex (>0.14 seconds)
- AV dissociation (but P waves are often difficult to distinguish in broad complex tachycardias)
- concordance (all QRS complexes in V1–V6 are either positive or negative)
- fusion beats
- capture beats

However, the key test is an adenosine challenge, which will interrupt an SVT but have no effect on VT. If VT is clear from the ECG or adenosine challenge has no effect and the patient is compromised, immediate DC cardioversion is needed. If there is time, a short-acting induction agent should be administered (or IV midazolam can be used). If the patient is losing consciousness, even this can be bypassed. Finally, if the patient loses their pulse, the cardiac arrest protocol should be immediately instituted (see Chapter 1, Cardiac arrest).

If the patient is only mildly compromised or suffering recurrent episodes, other therapeutic options are:

- IV amiodarone
- IV magnesium
- IV lidocaine (lignocaine) (no left ventricular [LV] dysfunction)
- overdrive pacing (this needs a temporary wire. The stimulator rate is turned up above the VT rate [usually ×3] to “capture” ventricular depolarization, and then gradually turned down)
The chronic investigation and management of VT will be carried out by a specialist (and probably a cardiologist with a special interest in electrophysiology). Investigation will center on finding a cause of VT. In the acute situation, there is often an obvious precipitating event (e.g., MI). However, the most common cause of recurrent VT is ischemic heart disease. Another key aspect of the investigation will be distinguishing between polymorphic and monomorphic VT. The former, in which complexes vary within or between episodes in their pattern, has a stronger association with sudden death. In difficult cases of VT, invasive electrophysiological testing (often with concurrent coronary angiography) is warranted.

Control of chronic VT is pharmacological – typical drugs that are used include sotalol, flecainide, amiodarone, propafenone, and disopyramide – although radiofrequency ablation of the right ventricular (RV) outflow tract VT can be successful, and in some cases an automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator (AICD) can save lives.

**Ventricular ectopics**

Ventricular ectopics, sometimes known as ventricular premature beats, are common in the general population. The shape of the complex is highly variable and depends on the ventricular source. Their significance is debated. They can be a marker of coronary disease and increased risk, but, without a precipitating cause, treatment generally does not lower risk. Electrolyte abnormalities should be excluded. If ventricular ectopics appear frequently during exercise (e.g., an exercise tolerance test), the patient should be investigated further for coronary artery disease.

**Torsades de pointes**

This is a form of polymorphic VT that occurs when the SR shown on an ECG has a prolonged QT interval. The ECG exhibits a continuously changing axis (hence, “turning of points”; see Figure 17), which can look like ventricular fibrillation (VF). The prolonged QT interval can be caused by:
antiarrhythmic agents
- hypokalemia
- hypomagnesemia
- bradycardia

However, in very rare cases it may be congenital (Jervell and Lange–Nielsen syndrome or Romano–Ward syndrome).

**Atrial fibrillation**

AF is the single most common cardiac arrhythmia. It is a condition where there is disorganized electrical and mechanical activity of the atria with a mechanism of multiple re-entrant wavelets. It may be chronic or occur in a paroxysmal fashion (see Table 6). On the ECG, it is recognized as an irregular rhythm with absent P waves (see Figure 18). Low-amplitude wavelets are frequently seen, but in many cases the baseline is flat. Usually, the ventricular response is controlled by the physiological conduction delay of the AV node and the ventricular response is slower in patients with diseases of the conducting system, in the elderly, or in individuals receiving medications that impair AV nodal conduction (eg, β-blockers, digitalis, or calcium-channel blockers). With intense sympathetic stimulation, it may be as rapid as 160–180 bpm.

The clinical manifestations of AF range from a complete absence of symptoms (usually in the young and fit) to hemodynamic collapse (in the elderly or those with systolic dysfunction). In addition to symptoms of palpitations, patients with AF have an increased risk of stroke and may also develop decreased exercise tolerance and LV dysfunction. The incidence of AF increases with age and its development is concentrated in patients with hypertensive heart disease, congestive heart failure, and rheumatic heart disease; the association with coronary artery disease is not as strong as with these other conditions. Among the noncardiac causes of AF, the association is strongest with hyperthyroidism, electrolyte abnormalities, and alcohol excess.

**The patient with newly discovered AF**

You will often be faced with a patient presenting with or without symptoms of AF, and an ECG showing the classic irregular rhythm with a flat or irregular baseline.
The approach to management is guided, as before, by the clinical picture – is the patient compromised? If the answer is yes, you should refer immediately.

If not, you then have to decide whether the AF is persistent or paroxysmal (see Figure 19). A large proportion of patients experience spontaneous cardioversion within 24–48 hours of AF onset, but it is rarely clear whether this is their first episode. The best approach is to teach the patient to take his or her own pulse and monitor its regularity. This way, you can gain some idea of how long the patient spends in AF and in SR over the next few days.

If they spontaneously cardiovert, chronic treatment of paroxysmal AF takes three forms:

- anticoagulation
- rate control (if necessary)
- antiarrhythmics (the choice of which is guided by symptoms)

Most recent studies show that even patients with paroxysmal AF or successful cardioversion should remain on anticoagulation (warfarin, international normalized ratio [INR] 2–3) since these individuals have a greater risk of cerebrovascular events than of bleeding complications.

The use of rate control and antiarrhythmics is also individualized – some patients will require neither. However, a good choice is a beta-blocker (eg, carvedilol, metoprolol), which can impact both of these factors. Another choice for patients with heart failure or hypertension associated with AF is flecainide (in the absence of coronary artery disease) or amiodarone (if coronary artery disease is present).

If, several days following chronic treatment, patients remain in AF, there are two avenues of management: accept progression to permanent AF (and attend to rate control and anticoagulation) or attempt cardioversion.
Deciding between the two (the decision will often be in the hands of the cardiologist) is influenced by several factors:

- How long has AF been present?
- How likely is SR to be maintained?
- What is the risk of thromboembolism?
- How severe are the symptoms?

Patients with longstanding AF or AF caused by structural abnormalities are least likely to stay in SR. Most cardiologists would agree that every patient should have one attempt at restoration of SR. However, this is not always the best policy. For example, in an elderly patient with asymptomatic, rate-controlled AF, the toxicity of antiarrhythmics may outweigh the benefit of restoration of SR.

The following points regarding treatment are helpful when treating a patient with AF.

- Regardless of the treatment strategy, all patients should have an ECG, chest x-ray, echo, and testing of thyroid function.
- If the decision is made to accept permanent AF, then control the rate with a combination of digoxin, a β-blocker, or a rate-limiting calcium-channel antagonist, and anticoagulate with warfarin, aiming for an INR of 2–3. The INR should be determined weekly (at least) in the initial stages and monthly thereafter. Patients over the age of 75 years who are considered at high risk for bleeding complications can be targeted to a lower INR of 2. In patients with contraindications to full anticoagulation, a daily dose of 300 mg aspirin can be used as an alternative to warfarin.
- If elective cardioversion is to be attempted, patients should be anticoagulated for 4 weeks with warfarin (aim for an INR of 2–3.5) and potassium levels should be kept in the upper normal range (>4.2 mmol) as this increases the chance of success of the cardioversion. Cardioversion can be electrical or chemical. If DC cardioversion is used, the patient receives a general anesthetic with a short-acting induction agent (usually propofol) and then receives shocks (synchronized to the R waves) of increasing energy: 100 J, 200 J, 360 J, and 360 J using paddles on the anterior and posterior chest (the patient lies on their side).

Chemical cardioversion is also possible using flecainide. In the event of successful cardioversion, patients should continue warfarin for at least 4 weeks. This is because the thromboembolic risk relates to “stunned” atria that do not resume normal mechanical function during this time.
New directions in the management of atrial fibrillation

It has recently been established that triggers in pulmonary veins can initiate AF and that circumferential or segmental disconnection of these veins at the left atrial junction can provide effective therapy. In certain patients, success rates for catheter-based pulmonary vein isolation range from 70% to 90%, but more than one procedure is often necessary. Surgery for AF is now usually reserved for use as an adjunctive treatment in patients having mitral or coronary surgery. Nevertheless, the large experience of the Maze procedure provides an important source of information to guide those performing catheter ablation. The Maze procedure was designed to exclude any place in the atria where the macro re-entrant circuits that underlie AF can form. Until recently, this involved an extensive series of atrial incisions, but the more recent cryosurgical Maze is just as effective and technically less demanding.

Atrial flutter

Atrial flutter is a rapid, regular rhythm with atrial rates of 250–350 bpm. The ventricular response rate varies, but it is usually a 2:1 block (creating the classic 150 bpm regular ventricular rhythm). The ECG pattern is typical – classic flutter waves are positive in the inferior leads and negative in lead V1 (see Figure 20).

Overall, atrial flutter is managed very much like AF:

- if the patient is hemodynamically compromised, one treatment option is DC cardioversion with low energy (50–100 J)
- a relatively easy way to convert atrial flutter to SR in the hospital setting is to use overdrive pacing in the high right atrium (RA)
- radiofrequency catheter ablation is now considered a curative approach in patients with recurrent atrial flutter. It can be eliminated by creating a linear lesion in the isthmus between the tricuspid annulus and the inferior vena cava. Acute success rates of 85%–90% and recurrence rates of 10%–15% have been reported
- patients with atrial flutter require anticoagulation therapy and, although there is more effective atrial contraction in atrial flutter (which may explain the decreased incidence of thromboembolism), guidelines are similar to those for AF
Pacemakers

Implantation of a permanent electronic replacement for the heart’s natural pacemaker began in the 1950s and is now a well-established treatment that increases patient longevity and improves their quality of life. Since its invention, advances in programmability, telemetry, and the ability to sense and pace two chambers have improved the level of care that can be provided. Miniaturization has made the process of implantation more straightforward and long-term complications less common. Advances in pacemaker technology mean that several new indications are likely to be added to the standard ones (see Table 7).

Pacemaker codes

Pacemaker codes are, to many, one of the most confusing aspects of electrocardiology (see Table 8). In fact, the labels, which are standardized, tell you all you need to know about the underlying programming and, in combination with the basic electrical wiring diagram of the heart (see Figure 1), can allow you to diagnose most problems.

The first letter refers to the chamber or chambers paced (atrium, ventricle, both [dual]). The second letter refers to the chamber sensed (atrium, ventricle, both [dual]) and the third letter details the response to sensing (triggered, inhibited, both [dual]). Thus, the most common pacemaker codes are the following.

1. DDD – this box senses both chambers and if it detects a missing or late atrial or ventricular contraction it will pace one or both. The most common scenarios are:
   - sinus bradycardia – atrial pacing will “kick in” and, assuming AV conduction is normal, no ventricular pacing will occur
   - AV block (Mobitz type II; third-degree) – the ventricle is paced either following a normal atrial contraction or a paced atrial contraction. The benefit of this – that ventricular contraction will “track” the increased

Figure 20. Electrocardiogram of atrial flutter.
atrial rate of exercise tachycardia – is also its biggest drawback; it will also increase the ventricular pacing rate in the presence of abnormally increased atrial contraction, eg, atrial tachycardia

(2) VVI – this type of box is considerably cheaper than those boxes capable of DDD programming. It senses and paces only the ventricle and, consequently, only requires one lead. VVI boxes are indicated for use in AF with bradycardia and AV block, and in sinus bradycardia with no AV block. They can cause pacemaker syndrome and retrograde atrial tachycardia. They can also trigger AF.

(3) AAI – this device senses and paces only the atrium. It does not pace if a normal P wave is sensed. Thus, it is indicated for use in sick sinus syndrome to prevent bradycardia.

(4) Rate-adaptive pacemakers, eg, VVI(R). Some patients do not elevate their heart rate normally in response to exercise. This is known as chronotropic incompetence, and is defined as a failure to elevate the heart rate to 70% of predicted heart rate or to >100 bpm. It is most common in sick sinus syndrome (40% of cases), but it can also occur in AF. The solution to this condition is to use a rate-adaptive pacemaker. This type of pacemaker uses one of three methods to detect the need for an increased heart rate and responds accordingly. Examples of detection methods are: mechanical accelerometers that detect movement; changes in transthoracic impedance that can be used to detect changes in ventilation or RV filling; and QT sensors that respond to the shortening of the paced QT interval by catecholamines.
Implantation
Pacemaker implantation is carried out under sedation. Leads are inserted via the subclavian or cephalic vein into the RA and/or RV. Atrial leads are J-shaped and are positioned in the right atrial appendage (anteriorly and superiorly in the RA). Ventricular leads are positioned in the RV apex. Most ventricular leads are placed in position and left against the myocardial wall. In certain circumstances, eg, when these leads become easily displaced or do not provide adequate threshold values, an active fixation lead can be used. This lead has a screw “thread” on its end – usually covered by a dissolvable tip, so that it is not exposed until it is in position – that allows the lead to be fixed into the myocardium.

After the leads are positioned, a series of tests are carried out to determine if the lead position is satisfactory from an electrical point of view. These would typically assess:

- threshold
  - the voltage required to cause a contraction. This increases if the lead is not well-positioned and can be a sensitive method of detecting poor placement
- lead impedance
  - this is a test of the integrity of the lead. It is essentially a measure of electrical resistance and is measured in Ohms
- abnormal stimulation of the phrenic nerve
  - a high-voltage protocol tests for a diaphragmatic twitch

Table 8. Pacemaker codes. A: atrium; D: dual (ie, both chambers or both responses); I: inhibited; R: rate responsive; T: triggered; V: ventricle.

THE PACEMAKER’S MAKER
Canadian John Hopps invented the first cardiac pacemaker. Hopps was trained as an electrical engineer at the University of Manitoba and joined the National Research Council in 1941, where he conducted research on hypothermia. While experimenting with radiofrequency heating to restore body temperature, Hopps made an unexpected discovery: if a heart stopped beating due to cooling, it could be started again by artificial stimulation using mechanical or electrical means. In 1950, this led to Hopps’ invention of the world’s first cardiac pacemaker. His device was far too large to be implanted inside the human body – it was an external pacemaker.
Once all the required tests are completed, the pacemaker pocket (in the fascia overlying the pectoral muscle) is created by blunt dissection and the wound sutured.

**Complications**

Acute complications will generally occur in hospital. These may include pneumothorax, RV perforation and cardiac tamponade, and hematoma.

Chronic complications are more likely to present to the generalist. Lead infection is fortunately rare, but can present a very difficult management problem. Skin commensals are the most common culprits in right-sided endocarditis. If you suspect this, you should immediately refer the patient for an echo and blood cultures. Treatment is initially with antibiotics, but the lead system should be quickly replaced if this is unsuccessful.

Lead displacement can occur as a result of concurrent right-sided pathology, eg, RV dilatation or valve abnormalities, and can be detected by changes in threshold. Changes in impedance can point to deterioration of old wires or loss of insulation properties. Subclavian vein or superior vena cava occlusion is more common with multiple lead systems. Classic signs include unilateral superficial vein engorgement around the upper thorax, neck, and face.

Erosion occasionally occurs if the pacemaker box becomes gradually more superficial. Unless it causes chronic pain, or erodes completely, it does not demand referral. Some patients move their own box back and forward under the skin (Twiddler’s syndrome). This can cause hemorrhage or lead breaks.

Infection of the implantation site can be problematic and should be taken seriously. In the early stage, superficial redness of the skin or swelling around the box will be noticed. For this, standard treatment is indicated, eg, a skin swab, cloxacinilin (flucloxacillin) (oral dosage, 500 mg four times daily). If the infection does not respond, or if you suspect deep infection for another reason, eg, marked constitutional symptoms, refer immediately. Infections resistant to antibiotic therapy demand box and lead extraction – a procedure not without difficulty or complications.

Pacemaker syndrome occurs in some patients with a VVI pacemaker who are in SR. It is thought to relate to the fact that although sometimes the atria contract “in time” and cardiac output is normal, at other times they contract against closed AV valves, which causes elevated venous pressure and a fall in cardiac output. The patient will experience dizziness, and the solution is to upgrade the patient to a DDD pacemaker.

Finally, atrial-sensing pacemakers, eg, DDD, respond to atrial arrhythmia with tachycardic pacing. If this happens, it is possible to alter the program (to DDI or set
an upper rate limit) or use antiarrhythmic drugs. This problem can be avoided by using a mode-switching pacemaker that detects atrial arrhythmia and switches to VVI.

**Pacemaker ECGs**
ECGs are harder to interpret in a patient with a pacemaker as there are more variables; although the pacing spikes are usually straightforward to recognize. It is important to remember that the paced QRS complex will be in an LBBB pattern because the wave of depolarization begins where the lead is placed in the RV.

**Doctor, I have a pacemaker, what should I avoid?**
This is a common question that patients ask. In general, patients should live life as normal. They should avoid magnetic resonance imaging studies, and care should be taken with the following:

- electrocautery during surgery – this can cause sensing problems
- therapeutic radiation
- cardioversion/defibrillation – this should be carried out using the lowest effective energy with the paddles in the anterior–posterior positions on the body of the patient
- mobile phones – these should not be placed in a shirt pocket next to the pacemaker
- car batteries – batteries can produce large magnetic fields. Again, this is only a problem if the person is leaning over and the pacemaker comes close to the battery
- high-voltage cables

Most manufacturers supply each pacemaker recipient with a wallet-sized emergency card for identification as the bearer of an implanted device. This card should include important information about current pacing parameters, names and numbers of the pulse generator (including leads), indication for pacing, and underlying structural heart disease.

**Patient follow-up**
Application of a magnet to many pacemaker generators reveals the current battery status by pacing with a fixed pacing rate or “magnet rate”. The pacemaker rate decreases in most models with declining battery charge. When a decrease indicates exhaustion of one battery capacity, the pulse generator should be replaced.

**Implantable cardioverter defibrillators**
The natural evolution of pacemaker technology led, in the late 1960s, to the development of the AICD. Early versions were implanted abdominally under
general anesthesia. These boxes, now barely bigger than a VVI pacemaker, are implanted under heavy sedation/light general anesthesia, and have revolutionized the treatment of ventricular arrhythmias. Indications for use of the device are expanding as the evidence base grows, but at present these include VF or VT cardiac arrest without a reversible cause; spontaneous sustained VT; syncope of undetermined origin with hemodynamically significant sustained VT; and nonsustained VT with prior MI or LV dysfunction. A recent study suggested that all post-MI patients with an EF <30% should receive an ACD.

An AICD is expensive – approximately the same cost as bypass grafting – but the device is multifunctional. It is capable of bradycardia and tachyarrhythmia detection, overdrive pacing or defibrillation, and event memory (ie, it can “play back” the intracardiac trace from a few minutes before the event, which is extremely useful diagnostically).

The AICD contains a device program for termination of VT and this highlights its versatility. It can initiate:

- burst pacing – a short burst of paced beats delivered at approximately 90% of the rate of the VT
- ramp pacing – a short burst of paced beats at a rate increasing up to 90% of the rate of the VT (to try to achieve capture)
- low-energy shock
- high-energy shock

The programming of AICDs is sophisticated and is carried out by telemetry (a magnet detector is placed over the unit). The energy of shock delivered by the AICD is a magnitude less than that delivered across the chest wall by an external defibrillator (internal 5–35 J, external 100–360 J). If an AICD delivers a shock, it is important to refer the patient to the nearest center where the unit can be interrogated.

**Electrophysiological studies**

Electrophysiology is a rapidly advancing field in which the potential indications currently outweigh the availability of facilities. The indications for electrophysiology are detailed in Table 9.

The essence of the electrophysiological test is a measurement of the intracardiac ECG: (1) during normal SR; (2) during an induced arrhythmia; and (3) following premature extrastimuli.
Potential indications for electrophysiology

Sinus node dysfunction
• to evaluate the AV node or where the link between symptoms and arrhythmia is not secure

AV block
• suspected infranodal block (ie, pathology of the bundle of His or Purkinje fibers)
• intraventricular conduction delay

Frequent AVNRT
• especially if frequent episodes occur despite drug treatment

Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome
• to characterize the accessory pathway and ablate it

Unexplained syncope
• after a negative tilt test, or in the presence of known heart disease

Cardiac arrest
• in the absence of myocardial infarction

Table 9. Potential indications for electrophysiology. AV: atrioventricular; AVNRT: atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Typically</th>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>Action potential duration</th>
<th>Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>Quinidine, procainamide, disopyramide</td>
<td>Block sodium channels (short dissociation time)</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>Supraventricular and ventricular tachycardias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rarely used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Lidocaine (lignocaine)</td>
<td>Block sodium channels (medium dissociation time)</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Used post-MI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1c</td>
<td>Flecainide, propafenone</td>
<td>Block sodium channels (long dissociation time)</td>
<td>↔</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>β-blockers, (eg, atenolol)</td>
<td>Abrogate sympathetic drive</td>
<td>↔</td>
<td>Commonly used for ventricular and supraventricular arrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Amiodarone, sotalol</td>
<td>Inhibit potassium current</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>Commonly used for ventricular and supraventricular arrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Diltiazem, verapamil</td>
<td>Block L-type calcium channels</td>
<td>Block at AV node</td>
<td>Ventricular rate control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Termination of SVT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10. The Vaughan-Williams classification of antiarrhythmic drugs.
AV: atrioventricular; MI: myocardial infarction; SVT: supraventricular tachycardia; ↑: increase in duration; ↓: decrease in duration; ↔: no change in duration.
Measurements are usually taken from several intracardiac sites, allowing identification of sinus node function and recovery, sinoatrial conduction, AV nodal conduction, and triggered ventricular arrhythmias. Treatment is with radiofrequency stimulation, which can ablate accessory pathways or interrupt re-entry circuits.

Drugs in arrhythmia

Table 10 describes the Vaughan-Williams classification of antiarrhythmic drugs, and Figure 21 outlines the drugs used in the treatment of arrhythmia.

Figure 21. Drugs used in the treatment of arrhythmia. The typical cardiac action potential is also shown: a fast sodium current and slower calcium current depolarize cardiac cells. The plateau phase caused by calcium entry contributes to the long refractory period, which protects the heart from re-excitation.
Further reading


Disease of the heart valves remains an important cause of morbidity and mortality across the world. While advances in echocardiography and the widespread availability of antibiotics have changed the prevalence, management, and especially the diagnosis of valve disease for specialists, very little has changed for generalists, who hear heart murmurs less frequently. Even though echo diagnosis is not readily available to generalists, they nevertheless feel pressured to identify murmurs and to report them, with their associated signs, in the referral letter. Similarly, for many examiners, the appeal of obscure murmurs for clinical short-case exams remains too great to resist, despite its mostly historical relevance. Yet, there are few greater pleasures in clinical medicine than having your stethoscopic diagnostic brilliance confirmed by an echo report. Furthermore, healthcare economics has prompted a renewed interest in the power of the stethoscope for diagnosing and even quantifying valve disease.

The asymptomatic murmur

Opinions differ as to the management of a murmur that has been picked up incidentally. By far the most common is the mid systolic 2/6 murmur (grade II – see Table 1). For children and young adults with an asymptomatic mid systolic murmur, a negative history and a negative physical exam are sufficient to exclude sinister pathology in most cases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Murmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Just audible in a quiet room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Quiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Loud, no thrill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Loud, with thrill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Very loud with thrill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Audible without a stethoscope</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Grading of murmurs.
In the elderly, it is important to differentiate between the common and benign aortic sclerosis and the less common and less benign aortic stenosis (AS). As such, close attention should be paid to the cardiac exam. In particular, AS is indicated by:

- murmur radiation
- the presence of a thrill
- a soft second heart sound

In addition, an electrocardiogram should be carried out to screen for left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), ischemia, and atrial size or conduction abnormalities. If none of the above is present and the patient remains asymptomatic, the most likely diagnosis is aortic sclerosis and no echo is required.

Referral is warranted when a murmur in an asymptomatic patient is:

- systolic and grade III or above
- late systolic
- mid systolic and accompanied by clinical signs suggestive of AS
- diastolic
- continuous

**Aortic stenosis**

**Causes**

**Congenital aortic stenosis**

Congenital AS is usually due to a bicuspid valve. A bicuspid valve in itself does not give rise to significant hemodynamic abnormality, but it has a tendency to calcify and a predisposition to infective endocarditis (see Table 2).

**Rheumatic aortic stenosis**

Rheumatic AS results from cusp fusion and calcification many years following rheumatic fever.

**Senile aortic stenosis**

Senile, or degenerative, AS results from calcium deposition on the aortic surface of the valve. This is becoming an increasingly important disability problem in the elderly.

**Physical signs**

- The carotid pulse is slow rising with reduced amplitude.
- The venous pressure is usually normal until late in the disease.
The apex beat is sustained and can be doubled due to an additional atrial component.

On auscultation, the second heart sound is single when the valve is calcified due to a lack of aortic component. The classic ejection systolic murmur, which can radiate to one or both carotids, is usually heard best over the aortic area. A soft, early diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation (AR) often coexists.

**Table 2.** Clinical signs in aortic stenosis and aortic regurgitation. EC: ejection click; EDM: early diastolic murmur; ESM: ejection systolic murmur; SLE: systemic lupus erythematosus.

- The apex beat is sustained and can be doubled due to an additional atrial component.
- On auscultation, the second heart sound is single when the valve is calcified due to a lack of aortic component. The classic ejection systolic murmur, which can radiate to one or both carotids, is usually heard best over the aortic area. A soft, early diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation (AR) often coexists.

**Investigation and management**

Echo is the diagnostic tool of choice for valve disease – in particular, Doppler measurement of valve gradients can quantify lesions. Significant hemodynamic changes do not occur until the aortic valve area has been reduced to a quarter of its normal size (the normal orifice is 3–4 cm²). AS is classed as:

- mild if the area is $>1.5 \text{ cm}^2$
- moderate if the area is 1–1.5 cm²
- severe if the area is $<1 \text{ cm}^2$
Severe stenosis causes a transvalvular pressure gradient of >50 mm Hg in the presence of normal transvalvular flow (ie, normal LV function). However, abnormally low pressure gradients are found in conditions of LV dysfunction, so the gradient alone is not a clear guide.

The natural history of AS is one of slow progression. Studies suggest that some patients exhibit a decrease in valve area of 0.1–0.3 cm²/year, although no progression is discernible in many patients. However, regardless of the individual variability, symptoms of angina, syncope, or heart failure generally develop after a latent period. At this point, the outlook changes dramatically. After the onset of symptoms, the average survival is less than 3 years. Thus, development of symptoms is the critical point in the natural history of AS and thereafter the benefits of surgery outweigh the risk. Consequently, asymptomatic AS patients should be monitored closely. Although there is no clear consensus, most cardiologists follow-up mild AS annually (together with 5-yearly echos); moderate AS every 6 months (together with 2-yearly echos); and severe AS more frequently (together with annual echos). If a patient with AS presents with a change in symptoms, their next appointment at the cardiology clinic should be expedited.

If a patient with severe AS is undergoing open chest bypass grafting for coexisting coronary artery disease (CAD), the opportunity should be taken to carry out aortic valve replacement (AVR) – regardless of whether or not AS symptoms are evident. The merit of carrying out a concomitant AVR is less clear for those with mild or moderate AS.
Cardiac catheterization is only indicated in AS for two reasons: (1) to perform coronary angiography before AVR in patients with risk factors for CAD; (2) to assess the severity of AS in symptomatic patients when AVR is planned or when noninvasive tests are inconclusive (catheterization allows accurate quantification of the orifice because it can account for transvalvular flow).

Contrary to popular belief, exercise testing is not contraindicated for mild to moderate AS patients and can give useful information with respect to exercise capacity, heart rate recovery, and exercise-induced rise in blood pressure.

**Balloon valvotomy**

Percutaneous balloon aortic valvotomy (stretching a stenotic valve by balloon inflation) has an important role to play in the treatment of young adults with AS, but a very limited role in older patients. This is because the postoperative valve area is rarely >1 cm² and because complications are frequent (10%) and serious. This procedure can act as a “bridge” to reduce the requirement for surgery (with its inherent risk) in adult patients with refractory pulmonary edema or cardiogenic shock.

**Aortic valve replacement in the elderly**

Due to the limitations of medical therapy and balloon valvotomy, AVR should be considered for all elderly patients with symptomatic AS. However, the decision as to whether to carry out AVR is rarely straightforward and must take into account the risks as viewed by both the surgeon and the patient. Comorbidity in the form of LVH or CAD greatly increases the risk associated with surgery. In addition, specific valve problems, such as heavy calcification and narrow LV outflow tract or annulus, make the procedure more complex. The decision is highly individual.

**Aortic regurgitation**

AR is associated with classic clinical signs (see Table 2):

- waterhammer (collapsing) pulse – detected by comparing the character of the radial pulse at the level of the heart with its character on elevation of the arm (use several fingers). Elevation accentuates the steep rise-and-fall character of this pulse, which seems to slap faster and harder against the fingers
- Corrigan’s sign – visible arterial pulsation in the neck
- de Musset’s sign – nodding of the head in time with the heartbeat
- Duroziez’s sign – caused by retrograde diastolic flow in the femoral artery. Place the stethoscope on the femoral pulse and occlude the artery distally. The turbulent flow will be picked up as a “to-and-fro” murmur
Quincke’s sign – capillary pulsation in the nail beds that is visible on applying gentle pressure to induce a degree of whitening

Traube’s sign – a “pistol-shot” sound heard over the femoral pulse

Müller’s sign – pulsation of the uvula

An early diastolic murmur is heard at the left lower sternal edge when the patient is sitting forward and holding his or her breath in expiration. There could also be a coexistent aortic systolic flow murmur, caused by the large stroke volume (rather than reflecting organic AS). There may be a mid diastolic murmur at the apex (Austin Flint murmur) caused by the regurgitant aortic jet vibrating the anterior mitral valve (MV) leaflet.

**Acute aortic regurgitation**

Acute AR is one hallmark of aortic dissection and is a medical emergency in its own right. A large regurgitant volume is suddenly imposed on an LV of normal size that has not had time to accommodate to the volume overload. The result is a reduction in stroke volume, compensatory tachycardia, pulmonary edema, and cardiogenic shock. Characteristic clinical findings are absent and an echo is essential to document the severity of the lesion. This is done by assessing the speed of equilibration of aortic and LV pressures in diastole. Useful echo measures are short regurgitant wave half time, short mitral deceleration time, and premature closure of the MV.

Mortality is high in acute severe AR and early surgical intervention is essential. Nitroprusside can be helpful in reducing preload and afterload, possibly in combination with dobutamine or dopamine. Intra-aortic balloon pumping is absolutely contraindicated (it increases aortic diastolic pressure and worsens the regurgitation), while β-blockers, often used in the management of dissection, should be used with caution in associated acute severe AR as they dampen the compensatory tachycardia.

**Chronic aortic regurgitation**

An early diastolic murmur is always justification for referral to a cardiologist for assessment and echo.

**Causes**

- Rheumatic involvement of the aortic valve, resulting in thickening of the cusps and fusion of the commissures – the valve neither opens nor closes completely.
- Dilatation of the aortic root resulting from aneurysm of the ascending aorta – this is commonly seen in Marfan’s syndrome.
Dilatation of the aortic annulus can also result from connective tissue disease, such as ankylosing spondylitis, rheumatoid arthritis, Reiter’s syndrome, relapsing polychondritis, or systemic lupus erythematosus. Dissecting aneurysm involving the aortic root. Syphilitic aortitis causing aortic aneurysm and dilatation of the valve ring that may involve the coronary ostia.

Table 2 outlines the causes of aortic regurgitation.

Natural history and therapeutic options
Chronic AR represents a condition of combined volume and pressure overload on the LV. The ejection fraction (EF) – the percentage of the end diastolic volume ejected during systole – is maintained by compensatory LVH and the majority of patients remain in this compensated phase for decades. However, in time, the EF drops. Although initially this is fully reversible, soon, due to progressive dilatation and remodeling, full recovery with AVR is out of reach. A large number of studies have identified LV systolic dysfunction and end systolic dimension as the key determinants of survival in patients undergoing AVR for AR. Thus, in contrast to AS, the critical point when the benefit of AVR outweighs the risk is determined not by symptoms, but by echo-determined LV function. More specifically, AVR is indicated in:

- patients with New York Heart Association (NYHA) class III or IV symptoms (see Chapter 7, Heart failure) and preserved LV systolic function – defined as normal EF (≥50% at rest)
- patients with NYHA class II symptoms and preserved LV systolic function at rest, but with progressive LV dilatation, declining rest EF, or declining effort tolerance (the trend is more important than the absolute level)
- patients with angina on walking or climbing stairs rapidly
- asymptomatic or symptomatic patients with mild to moderate LV dysfunction at rest (EF 25%–49%)
- patients undergoing open chest surgery for another reason (e.g., bypass grafting)

Exercise testing can be useful in AR if the patient is sedentary or has equivocal symptoms. It assesses functional capacity and the hemodynamic effects of exercise. Radionuclide ventriculography should be used if the echo window is poor. Cardiac catheterization is only required in patients at risk of CAD prior to AVR or where other tests are equivocal.
Asymptomatic patients with no LV dysfunction should be encouraged to participate in all forms of normal daily activity, including exercise (although lifting weights should be avoided).

Vasodilator therapy can, in theory, retard the natural history of chronic AR by reducing the regurgitant volume. However, very few studies have actually examined the effect of this treatment on the long-term outcome. Indications for vasodilator therapy (generally using long-acting nifedipine) are:

- long-term therapy in patients with severe regurgitation who have symptoms and/or LV dysfunction, when surgery is not recommended
- long-term therapy in asymptomatic patients with severe regurgitation who have LV dilatation, but normal systolic function
- long-term therapy in asymptomatic patients with hypertension and any degree of regurgitation
- long-term therapy in patients with persistent LV systolic dysfunction after AVR (angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor)
- short-term therapy to improve the hemodynamic profile of patients with severe heart failure symptoms and severe LV dysfunction before proceeding with AVR

Asymptomatic patients with mild AR and normal LV systolic function should be seen by a cardiologist annually and undergo echo every 2–3 years. Asymptomatic patients with normal systolic function, but severe AR and significant LV dilatation (end diastolic diameter >6 cm), require more frequent evaluation. These patients should be seen by a cardiologist every 6 months and undergo echo every 6–12 months.

**Mitral stenosis**

The MV apparatus consists of three components: two leaflets, the fibrous annulus, and the chordae tendineae, which connect the leaflets to the papillary muscles (see Figure 1). The anterior leaflet is larger than the posterior leaflet (see Figure 2). The normal area of the MV orifice is 4–5 cm². Symptoms of mitral stenosis (MS) develop when the orifice is <2.5 cm² and a critical stenosis occurs when it is approximately 1 cm² (see Figure 3). The signs and causes of MS are outlined in Table 3.

**Causes**

Rheumatic heart disease is the most common cause of MS, although it pre-dates the symptoms by at least 10 years. Other acquired causes are rare – eg, annular calcification, endocarditis, or granulomatous infiltration in association with eosinophilia.
Signs
Symptoms of MS generally occur during exertion, infection, stress, or with the onset of atrial fibrillation (AF) with a rapid ventricular response. This is because a left atrial (LA) pressure that is normal at rest rises with an increase in transmitral flow or a decrease in the diastolic filling time.

The most common manifestation is breathlessness, but a reduction in exercise tolerance or symptoms of right-sided congestion can also occur. The typical
Mitral stenosis Mitral regurgitation

**Signs**

- Malar flush
- P mitrale on ECG
- Parasternal heave
- A systolic thrill at the apex

**Causes**

- Rheumatic valve disease
- Age-related calcification
- Endocarditis
- Granulomatous infiltration

- Rheumatic valve disease
- Mitral valve prolapse
- Degenerative valve disease
- Infective endocarditis
- Ischemia

### Table 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mitral stenosis</th>
<th>Mitral regurgitation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Signs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening snap</td>
<td>Pansystolic murmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presystolic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accentuation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1 (loud)</td>
<td>S1 (soft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tapping apex</td>
<td>S2 (loud)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>S3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malar flush</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P mitrale on ECG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parasternal heave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Apex beat is sustained and prominent and there may be a systolic thrill at the apex

### Natural history

The disease takes a slow course with progressive acceleration later in life. In developed countries, the lag period from the time of rheumatic fever to the onset of symptoms is 20–40 years, and there is another 10 years before these symptoms resolve.
become disabling. The 10-year survival rate is high for asymptomatic patients (>80%), but low for those with symptoms (0%–15%). Asymptomatic patients with mild MS (MV area >1.5 cm²) require no further evaluation and do not need to be followed up more than annually.

**Percutaneous and surgical therapy**
Decisions on therapy are made by joint consideration of symptoms and MV morphology (including hemodynamics and pulmonary artery pressure). Therapeutic options include MV repair (open/closed commissurotomy), MV replacement, and percutaneous valvotomy.
Both repair and percutaneous valvotomy acutely result in a doubling of the valve area and a 60% reduction in transmitral gradient. However, open commissurotomy and percutaneous valvotomy produce better long-term hemodynamic results. The current recommendations for percutaneous and surgical therapy are outlined in Table 5.

### Table 5. Current recommendations for surgical therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>NYHA class II–IV symptoms, MVA ≤1.5 cm², and no LA thrombus or MR</th>
<th>Asymptomatic patients, MVA ≤1.5 cm², pulmonary hypertension (&gt;50 mm Hg), and no LA thrombus or MR</th>
<th>NYHA class III–IV symptoms, MVA ≤1.5 cm², and at high surgical risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MV repair</td>
<td>NYHA class III–IV symptoms, MVA ≤1.5 cm², and one of the following:</td>
<td>• percutaneous valvotomy is not available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• LA thrombus is resistant to anticoagulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• an intraoperative decision on repair versus replacement will be made</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV replacement</td>
<td>NYHA class I–II symptoms, MVA ≤1 cm², and severe pulmonary hypertension (&gt;60 mm Hg)</td>
<td>NYHA class III–IV symptoms, MVA ≤1.5 cm², and not suitable for repair or valvotomy (calcification, fibrosis, subvalvular fusion)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both repair and percutaneous valvotomy acutely result in a doubling of the valve area and a 60% reduction in transmitral gradient. However, open commissurotomy and percutaneous valvotomy produce better long-term hemodynamic results. The current recommendations for percutaneous and surgical therapy are outlined in Table 5.

### Medical therapy

Prophylaxis against rheumatic fever and endocarditis should be considered for all patients with MS. Agents with negative chronotropic properties, such as β-blockers or calcium-channel blockers, may benefit those in sinus rhythm with symptoms relating to exertional tachycardia.

### Atrial fibrillation

AF develops in 40% of patients with symptomatic MS and should be treated according to standard protocols (see Chapter 8, Arrhythmia). The value of anticoagulation therapy for those with AF and those with a prior embolic event with or without AF is clear. However, there is no evidence that oral anticoagulation is beneficial in those with MS who have neither AF nor a prior embolic event. The frequency of embolic events does not seem to be related to the severity of MS, the size of the LA, or the presence of symptoms. There is some controversy over
whether percutaneous mitral valvotomy should be performed in patients with new-onset AF and moderate or severe MS who are otherwise asymptomatic.

**Mitral regurgitation**

**Acute mitral regurgitation**

In acute severe mitral regurgitation (MR), the hemodynamic changes are not tolerated and the result is generally acute decompensation. Without time for compensatory LV and LA dilatation, the increase in ventricular preload leads to a decreased stroke volume and pulmonary congestion. However, examination findings may not be typical:

- there may be no hyperdynamic apex beat
- the systolic murmur may be short
- there may be a fourth heart sound

The most common cause of acute MR is papillary muscle rupture secondary to myocardial infarction (MI) (see Figure 5). In this situation, the principal differential diagnosis is ventricular septal defect and an echo is required to differentiate between the two. Ventricular septal defect is more likely with:

- right-sided radiation of murmur
- raised jugular venous pressure (JVP)
- anterior MI (inferior MI is more likely to cause acute MR)

The goal of medical therapy in acute severe MR is to diminish regurgitation, increase stroke volume, and reduce pulmonary congestion. As such, nitroprusside alone or in combination with dobutamine (if blood pressure is low) can be
effective. Intra-aortic balloon pumping can also help to achieve these goals. In many cases, emergency surgery is warranted. If so, prior transesophageal echo helps to characterize the anatomy and severity of the lesion. Cardiac catheterization should be performed if the patient is at high risk for CAD.

### Chronic mitral regurgitation

**Causes**

- Degenerative MV disease is common in the elderly. The valve leaflets are thickened, redundant, increased in area, and they prolapse into the LA in systole. The chordae may become elongated, thinned, and tortuous – predisposing to rupture.
Infective endocarditis is a major cause of chronic MR. Vegetations developing on the cusp vary from small nodules along the line of apposition to large friable masses of up to 10 mm or more (see Figure 6). “Jet” lesions on the anterior cusp of the MV can also occur in association with aortic valve endocarditis.

- Ischemia.

Clinical signs
The clinical signs of chronic MR are outlined in Table 6. With severe MR, the regurgitant murmur is usually short and stops at the same time as aortic valve closure. Occasionally, the murmur can hardly be heard due to early equalization of atrioventricular pressures. The signs and causes of MR are outlined in Table 3.

Natural history
In chronic MR, the increased preload and decreased afterload of the LV (caused by ejection of some of the stroke volume into the LA) are compensated for by LV and LA dilatation, and the total stroke volume is increased (the EF is also maintained). This compensated phase of chronic MR may last for years. Eventually, however, the volume overload causes sufficient dilatation to push the LV onto the downward portion of the Frank–Starling curve and dysfunction results (see Figure 7). Importantly, the loading conditions mean that this dysfunction might not be reflected in an abnormal EF (the EF in a patient with MR and normal LV function is >60%).

Asymptomatic patients with mild MR and no evidence of LV dilatation or dysfunction can be followed on a yearly basis and undergo echo less frequently than that. Asymptomatic patients with moderate MR should have an echo annually. Asymptomatic patients with severe MR should be followed up every

Figure 7. Frank–Starling curve showing left ventricular (LV) dysfunction.
6–12 months and undergo echo to detect silent LV dysfunction. Exercise testing is useful to document changes in exercise tolerance.

The timing of surgery is determined by the EF, LV end systolic dimension (LVESD), the presence of AF, and symptoms. It is indicated for those with:

- class II–IV symptoms, EF >60%, LVESD <45 mm
- EF 30%–60%, LVESD 45–55 mm (regardless of symptoms)
- asymptomatic patients with AF and normal EF
- symptomatic patients with normal EF and pulmonary hypertension (>50 mm Hg)
- asymptomatic patients with EF 50%–60% and LVESD <45 mm, or EF >60% and LVESD 45–55 mm
- patients with EF <30% and/or LVESD >55 mm in whom the chordae tendineae are likely to be intact (ie, no previous MI in that territory)

The operation of choice is MV repair. In many patients, however, replacement of the valve together with removal of part or all of the MV apparatus (chordae) is required. The repair procedure leads to better postoperative LV function and survival.

There is no generally accepted medical therapy for chronic MR. Although vasodilators might seem a sensible choice, in fact, in compensated chronic MR the afterload is decreased (since the LV has two routes of ejection); as such, drugs that reduce the afterload further are unlikely to be beneficial.

Chronic MR can also occur due to a primary ischemic cause, relating either to LV dysfunction or to chordal ischemia – revascularization or stenting can eliminate the episodes.

*Functional mitral regurgitation*

The normal function of the MV depends on the cusps, ring, and subvalvular apparatus, including papillary muscle fibers and the circumferential muscle layer supporting the mitral ring. Each of these components plays a significant role in maintaining the competence of the valve. With papillary muscle dysfunction due to ischemia or other causes of ventricular disease, cusp closure is not complete, leading to some degree of regurgitation. This can even occur, for example, in athletic hypertrophy. This is usually mild, but can be significant in rare cases. In such conditions, the heart rate is usually fast and the duration of MR long enough to compromise filling time and hence cardiac output. Although functional in origin, it can be hemodynamically significant.
Mitral valve prolapse

MV prolapse (MVP) is the single most common valvular abnormality. It affects 2%–6% of the population and is defined as a backward movement of one or both leaflets of the MV (usually the anterior) into the LA during (ventricular) systole. In most cases it is associated with trivial MR. However, as a result of its prevalence, it is also the most common single cause of significant MR. Although MVP does not alter life expectancy, all of the above complications of MR can occur. Sudden death, often reported as an association with MVP, is rare (<2% on long-term follow-up).

Classic findings on auscultation are a mid systolic click followed by a late systolic murmur. The click is thought to be caused by a tensing of the MV apparatus as the leaflets prolapse into the LA. The murmur is usually high pitched and loudest at the apex. Certain maneuvers can help to secure the diagnosis: standing reduces end diastolic volume (EDV), bringing the click–murmur nearer to the first heart sound; squatting increases EDV (and afterload), moving the click–murmur nearer to the second heart sound.

Patients with these findings should be referred for echo assessment. Interestingly, there is no absolute consensus on criteria for diagnosing MVP on two-dimensional echo. The
diagnosis should never be made on one view alone (especially if that is the 4-chamber view). Serial echos are not necessary unless there is a change in the clinical picture.

Management involves reassurance and prophylaxis for endocarditis. Patients who suffer from palpitations should have Holter/event monitoring to make a firm diagnosis. Aspirin is recommended for patients with documented focal neurological events who are in sinus rhythm and have no atrial thrombus. Recurrent transient ischemic attacks or stroke in MVP patients demand long-term warfarin therapy. Ultimately, MV repair may be required, and the indications are as for MR (described above).

**Tricuspid valve disease**

In comparison with the left side, the right side of the heart is a low-pressure system. Consequently, disorders such as endocarditis, in which high-pressure jets help to “seed” the infective vegetations, occur less frequently. The notable exception is in intravenous drug abusers, where right-sided endocarditis is more common. Perhaps the most common cause of tricuspid valve incompetence, however, is elevated right ventricular (RV) pressure, secondary to pulmonary hypertension, MS, pulmonary stenosis, dilated cardiomyopathy, or RV failure. In addition, rheumatic heart disease can affect the tricuspid valve and tends to produce a combination of tricuspid stenosis and regurgitation – the overriding symptoms are those of regurgitation. Ebstein’s anomaly is a congenital disorder affecting the tricuspid valve (see Chapter 14, Adult congenital heart disease).

**Clinical signs**

Physical examination is key to the diagnosis of tricuspid regurgitation. Typical signs are:

- gross fluid retention
- significant peripheral edema
- ascites that may result in nausea
- raised JVP with a prominent systolic wave and sharp Y descent
- parasternal heave and loud P2, suggesting pulmonary hypertension as a cause
- an enlarged, tender, pulsatile liver and, occasionally, mild jaundice
- a pansystolic murmur at the left lower sternal edge that is increased by inspiration

**Management**

Severe tricuspid regurgitation resulting from any cause is associated with a poor long-term outcome due to RV dysfunction and systemic venous congestion. The timing of surgery and the most suitable operation remain controversial, although chordal reconstruction and annuloplasty have become established in recent years.
Annuloplasty involves the use of a prosthetic ring to support the endogenous dilated annulus. Valve replacement is also possible.

Medical management treats fluid retention and AF. Standard protocols are used, although high doses and combination diuretics are often required.

**Pulmonary valve disease**

Pulmonary regurgitation is caused by pulmonary hypertension and annular dilatation resulting from various causes of left-sided heart disease (as well as primary pulmonary hypertension). An early diastolic murmur (Graham Steell murmur) is heard over the pulmonary area and should be distinguished from that of AR.

Antibiotic prophylaxis is only required if the cause is rheumatic. Most pulmonary valve disease does not need treatment. However, valve replacement can be carried out in cases of intractable right heart failure.

**Valve disease in pregnancy**

In pregnancy, there is a 50% increase in circulating blood volume. The cardiac output peaks between the second and third trimesters, predominantly due to an increase in stroke volume, although the heart rate also increases by up to 20%. Total peripheral resistance falls disproportionately, reducing the diastolic blood pressure and widening the pulse pressure. Occasionally, in the supine position the inferior vena cava can be compressed by a gravid uterus, leading to an abrupt decrease in venous return. This can result in light headedness, but quickly resolves on changing position. The increased blood volume and cardiac output can accentuate stenotic murmurs, while the lowered peripheral resistance can actually reduce regurgitant murmurs. In general, echo demonstrates a degree of “physiological” chamber enlargement that, in a significant minority of women, may be associated with functional MR.

In some conditions (eg, cyanotic heart disease, Eisenmenger syndrome, and severe pulmonary hypertension), the changes resulting from pregnancy greatly increase risk and most cardiologists would counsel against pregnancy. The following are also associated with increased risk, either to the mother or fetus:

- severe AS
- MR/AR with class III–IV symptoms
- MS with class II–IV symptoms
- pulmonary pressures >75% of systemic
- EF <40%
- mechanical prosthetic valves requiring anticoagulation
- AR in Marfan’s syndrome
Although risk is increased, many patients with valvular abnormalities can be managed through pregnancy with conservative medical measures aimed at optimizing intravascular volume.

**Mitral stenosis**
Penicillin prophylaxis should be continued in pregnant women with MS. The cautious use of diuretics and β-blockers in those with mild to moderate disease can prevent tachycardia and optimize diastolic filling. For women with severe disease, a percutaneous balloon valvotomy prior to conception should be considered. Those who develop class III–IV symptoms during pregnancy should also undergo valvotomy. This can be achieved with very limited fluoroscopy or appropriate shielding.

**Mitral regurgitation**
The usual cause of MR is MVP; this rarely requires treatment.

**Aortic stenosis**
The most likely cause of AS in a woman of childbearing age is congenital bicuspid disease. Mild to moderate obstruction can be managed conservatively throughout pregnancy, whereas those with severe disease (eg, gradient >50 mm Hg, LV function likely to be normal) should be advised to delay conception until treatment is obtained.

**Aortic regurgitation**
AR can usually be managed medically with a combination of diuretics and vasodilator therapy. As with MR, surgery should be contemplated during pregnancy for the control of class III–IV symptoms.

**Anticoagulation in pregnancy**
Warfarin crosses the placenta and has been associated with an increased incidence of spontaneous abortion, fetal deformity, prematurity, and stillbirth. The incidence is probably around 5%–10%. In contrast, heparin does not cross the placenta and is generally safer. However, it is associated with a higher degree of thromboembolic complications. The evidence base for decision making is not good, and the decision should be made in partnership with the patient after explaining the risks involved. Most change from warfarin to heparin at week 36 in anticipation of labor.
Further reading


Chapter 10

Infectedive endocarditis

Background

Endocarditis was first described by William Osler in 1885. It is an inflammatory process that affects the endocardium and may have an infective or noninfective (e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus) origin. It is uncommon in the western world (22 cases per million), but more prevalent in developing countries.

Diagnosis

Symptoms

Endocarditis is rarely an obvious diagnosis for a generalist. It may present with a wide variety of clinical signs, some subtle; the diagnosis may be difficult or the signs misleading, and there is a wide differential diagnosis to consider. However, there is a wealth of clinical signs to look for.

*Constitutional symptoms*

Endocarditis should be considered in patients with vague or generalized constitutional symptoms such as fever, rigors, night sweats, anorexia, weight loss, or arthralgia.

*Cardiac signs*

The presence of a new murmur is very significant, as is a change in the nature of an existing murmur (a regurgitant murmur may disappear on worsening). Myocardial involvement or valvular dysfunction may both contribute to left ventricular failure.

*Skin lesions*

Endocarditis is indicated by:

- Osler’s nodes – tender lesions found on finger pulps and thenar/hypothenar eminences (see Figure 1)
- Janeway lesions – transient, nontender macular papules on palms or soles
- splinter hemorrhages
- petechiae (embolic or vasculitic)
- clubbing – in long-standing disease
Eyes
Roth spots (boat-shaped hemorrhages with pale centers, in retina) and conjunctival splinter hemorrhages may be found.

Splenomegaly
Splenic infarction may occur as a result of emboli. In this case, splenic palpation may be painful and tender, and a rub may be heard.

Neurological
An acute confusional state is common in patients with infective endocarditis (IE). Cerebral emboli, which usually affect the middle cerebral artery, result in hemiplegia and sensory dysfunction. Mycotic aneurysms also affect the middle cerebral artery, where rupture may cause a subarachnoid hematoma. Mycotic aneurysms can occur several years after endocarditis has been treated.

Renal
Infarction causes loin pain and hematuria. Immune complex deposition may result in glomerulonephritis.

OSLER’S NODES
William Osler, 1909, on the eponymous Osler’s nodes: “One of the most interesting features of [endocarditis] and one to which very little attention has been paid is the occurrence of ephemeral spots of a painful nodular erythema, chiefly in the skin of the hands and feet, the nodosités cutanées éphémères of the French… The commonest situation is near the tip of the finger, which may be slightly swollen.”
If any of these signs occur together with a fever, the patient should be urgently referred to a cardiologist for blood cultures and echocardiography – the level of risk will determine whether this is transesophageal echo (TEE) or transthoracic echo. Blind treatment with antibiotics should not be undertaken since it will delay diagnosis and identification of the causal organism. Antibiotics should not be initiated before three sets of blood cultures have been taken.

**Formal diagnosis**
The Duke diagnostic classification for IE divides signs and symptoms into major and minor criteria (see Table 1). IE is diagnosed if patients have:

- two major criteria; or
- one major and three minor criteria; or
- five minor criteria

These criteria are associated with a 99% specificity for diagnosis in follow-up studies. It has been proposed that the minor criteria be extended to include erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) or C-reactive protein (CRP), splenomegaly, microscopic hematuria, and newly diagnosed clubbing. This adjustment increases diagnostic sensitivity by 10%.

**Intravenous drug abuse**
Right-sided endocarditis is common in intravenous drug abusers (IVDAs) because of nonsterile injection into the venous system. The presentation tends to differ from that of classic IE, in that these patients are more likely to develop pneumonia or septic pulmonary emboli than the characteristic signs mentioned above (which result from left-sided embolization). In addition, predominant right-sided failure is more common (look for significantly raised jugular venous pressure and gross peripheral edema). The tricuspid valve is most commonly affected (50%), whereas involvement of the mitral and aortic valves is less common (20% each). The involvement of multiple valves is common. Pulmonary valve endocarditis is rare.

**Etiology**
IE has a large number of causative organisms.

**Streptococci**
These account for 50%–80% of IE cases. *Streptococcus viridans* (eg, *S. anguis*, *S. milleri*, *S. mutans*, *S. mitior*) make up the normal bacterial flora of the pharynx and upper respiratory tract. Tonsillectomy, dental extraction, and dental cleaning can result in bacteremia and lead to infection.
The Duke criteria for the diagnosis of IE

Major criteria
1. Positive blood culture for IE
   A. Typical micro-organism consistent with IE from two separate blood cultures, as noted below:
      • viridans streptococci, Streptococcus bovis\(^1\), or HACEK group; or
      • community-acquired Staphylococcus aureus or enterococci, in the absence of a primary focus; or
   B. Micro-organisms consistent with IE from persistently positive blood cultures defined as:
      • two or more positive cultures of blood samples drawn >12 hours apart
      • all of three or a majority of four or more separate cultures of blood (with first and last sample drawn ≥1 hour apart)
2. Evidence of endocardial involvement
   A. Positive echocardiogram for IE defined as:
      • oscillating intracardiac mass on valve or supporting structures, in the path of regurgitant jets, or on implanted material in the absence of an alternative anatomic explanation; or
      • abscess; or
      • new partial dehiscence of prosthetic valve; or
   B. New valvular regurgitation (worsening or changing of pre-existing murmur not sufficient)

Minor criteria
1. Predisposition: predisposing heart condition or intravenous drug use
2. Fever: temperature ≥38.0°C
3. Vascular phenomena: major arterial emboli, septic pulmonary infarcts, mycotic aneurysm, intracranial hemorrhage, conjunctival hemorrhages, and Janeway lesions
4. Immunologic phenomena: glomerulonephritis, Osler’s nodes, Roth spots, and rheumatoid factor
5. Microbiological evidence: positive blood culture, but does not meet a major criterion as noted above\(^b\) or serological evidence of active infection with an organism consistent with IE
6. Echocardiography findings: consistent with IE, but do not meet a major criterion as noted above

WILLIAM OSLER, 1919:
“Observe, record, tabulate, communicate. Use your five senses.”
Sir William Osler (1849–1919) is one of the most admired and honored physicians in the history of medicine. He exerted a truly global influence through professorships (McGill, Johns Hopkins, and Oxford), his textbook The Principles and Practice of Medicine, and other clinical and philosophical writings. This influence is apparent not least in the sheer number of conditions that bear his name: Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome (hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia), Osler’s nodes, Osler–Libman disease (subacute bacterial endocarditis), and Osler–Libman–Sacks syndrome (systemic lupus erythematosus with endocarditis) are simply a few. But it was perhaps his overwhelming humanism and his dedication to patient-centered learning that marked him out as truly great (he once ran after an alcoholic beggar to whom he’d just given coins and added his own overcoat to the donation, saying: “You may drink yourself to death, and undoubtedly will, but I cannot let you freeze to death”). The combination of profound caring, a prolific output of creative writing and ideas, and a lifelong penchant for elaborate practical jokes has made him one of the most memorable physicians of the 20th century.

Staphylococci

Staphylococcus aureus and Staphylococcus epidermidis account for 20%–30% of subacute cases of IE and 50% of the acute forms. The presence of central venous catheters (feeding lines or temporary pacing lines) increases susceptibility. Acute S. aureus infection of previously normal valves has a mortality rate of 3%. This is the most common situation in IVDAs. Coagulase-negative staphylococci cause 30%–50% of prosthetic valve endocarditis.

Enterococci

Enterococci account for 5%–15% of IE cases. Enterococcal organisms, which include Streptococcus faecalis, have low infectivity.

HACEK organisms

The HACEK group of organisms – Haemophilus parainfluenza, Haemophilus aphrophilus, Actinobacillus (Haemophilus) actinomycetemcomitans, Cardiobacterium hominis, the Eikenella species, and the Kingella species – also commonly cause IE and can be difficult to diagnose. Their identification may require samples to be taken in special media.

IE is also caused by other, less common organisms. Candida, Aspergillus, Histoplasma, and Brucella infections are rare, but are found, in particular, in IVDAs, alcoholics, and patients with prosthetic heart valves. Coxiella burnetii (the causative agent of Q fever) can also cause a subacute infection.
Pathogenesis

Endocarditis infection occurs along the edges of the heart valves. The lesions, called vegetations, are masses composed of fibrin, platelets, and infecting organisms, held together by agglutinating antibodies produced by the bacteria. As inflammation continues, ulceration may result in erosion or perforation of the valve cusps, leading to valvular incompetence, damage to the conduction pathway (if in the septal area), or rupture of a sinus of Valsalva (if in the aortic area).

Although endocarditis can affect native and prosthetic valves, infection seldom affects a previously normal heart – the majority (60%) of IE patients have a predisposing cardiac condition. Vegetations usually affect the left side of the heart, with the most common underlying lesions being mitral valve prolapse and degenerative mitral and aortic regurgitation (see Figure 2).

Rheumatic disease is a risk factor for the development of endocarditis. Other predisposing cardiac lesions include hypertrophic cardiomyopathy with associated mitral reflux, subaortic stenosis, and ventricular aneurysm. There are also congenital lesions that predispose adults to endocarditis: these include ventricular septal defect (VSD), bicuspid aortic valve, and coarctation of the aorta.

Vegetations occur when a high-pressure jet enters a low-pressure cavity through a narrow orifice. This explains why endocarditis complicates a small VSD, but is not associated with a large VSD, mitral stenosis, or an atrial septal defect. In the presence of a VSD, vegetations can be found on the right ventricular side of the VSD, on the tricuspid valve, or where the jet impinges on the right ventricular wall. Vegetations found in coarctation usually occur distal to the obstruction.

Figure 2. Mitral valve vegetation.
Finally, in children, cyanotic heart disease is still the most common cause of endocarditis, and the risk does not diminish after surgical repair as prostheses carry their own risk.

**Prosthetic valve endocarditis**

A special subset of endocarditis is that affecting prosthetic valves. This is traditionally divided into early onset (within 60 days of surgery) or late onset. Early onset usually results from perioperative valve contamination with staphylococci, whereas the etiology of late prosthetic valve endocarditis resembles native valve infection, usually due to streptococci.

**Refer with confidence**

As mentioned above, IE can be a difficult diagnosis to make, and the key for the generalist is to always be aware of it as a differential. Fever and arthralgia are very common complaints, but if there is any suggestion that they are not due to a simple viral illness (eg, by the presence of a particularly high temperature or other clinical signs [see above]) then the patient should be referred for blood cultures and an echo. If fever and a changing murmur coexist then urgent referral is warranted, although, even here, it can be useful to take blood cultures and a bottle for serology (for the diagnosis of culture-negative endocarditis) yourself.

**Specialist management**

**Investigations**

**Blood cultures**

Blood cultures are the primary investigation in the diagnosis of IE and yield the causative micro-organism in up to 95% of cases. A failure to do so can be due to prior antibiotic treatment, the presence of fastidious organisms (eg, belonging to the HACEK group), or unusual organisms such as *Candida, Chlamydia*, or *Brucella*. Most importantly, blood has to be drawn before antibiotic treatment is initiated, at three different time points over a minimum of 1 hour. At each time point, blood should be taken from a different site of the patient’s body – but not from central lines – and each sample is placed into a pair of blood culture bottles that cultivate aerobic and anaerobic bacteria separately.

If immediate antibiotic treatment is warranted, this can be initiated right after completion of blood culturing, once microbiology tests have identified a specific organism and the antibiotic therapy has been modified accordingly. Antibiotic therapy can have an enormous impact on the patient’s prognosis; therefore, all efforts have to be made to collect and culture specimens as carefully as possible. This ensures the correct identification of the causative micro-organisms, and ultimately the correct use of antibiotics.
Echocardiography
This is the key investigation as it can assess underlying cardiac function as well as demonstrate vegetations. Chamber size, pre-existing rheumatic disease, and valve apparatus can be examined and the degree of valve incompetence assessed. Transthoracic two-dimensional echo can detect vegetations above 2 mm in diameter, whereas TEE has greater precision in detection of lesions (1–1.5 mm), with a sensitivity and specificity of over 90% (see Figure 3). Detection of prosthetic endocarditis is more sensitive with TEE.

Other investigations
Other investigations include the following:

- blood count – normochromic normocytic anemia is usual, while neutrophil leucocytosis is common
- ESR – this may be raised
- renal and liver function test – levels of creatinine may be raised; levels of liver enzymes may be raised in a hepatocellular (nonobstructive) pattern
- CRP – increases acutely in bacterial infection
- urine microscopy – microscopic hematuria is common in early disease
- culture – culture any skin lesion, drip site, or other focus of infection
- electrocardiography (ECG) – ECG regularly (daily if aortic or septal root abscess is suspected)

Treatment
Antibiotics
If, following blood cultures, the diagnosis is secure, high-dose IV antibiotics should be started immediately. It is becoming increasingly common to insert a
tunneled central line to facilitate several weeks of IV treatment without the need for repeated cannulation – with the pain and attendant risk of secondary infection that this incurs.

Native valve endocarditis with a subacute onset is most likely to be caused by S. viridans or an enterococcal species. Treatment involves IV penicillin (2.4 g, 4 hourly) for up to 4 weeks, with gentamicin (1 mg/kg, 12 hourly) for 2 weeks. If the onset is acute, staphylococci need to be covered and treatment should include IV cloxacillin (flucloxacillin) (3 g, 6 hourly, in place of penicillin) with oral fusidic acid.

If the patient is allergic to penicillin, other possibilities are vancomycin (1 g twice daily) or teicoplanin (400 mg twice daily for 3 days, then 400 mg daily). Plasma levels of gentamicin and vancomycin need to be monitored every 48–72 hours.

Empirical treatment of endocarditis affecting prosthetic valves should cover streptococci, enterococci, staphylococci (including methicillin-resistant S. aureus), and Gram-negative organisms. Vancomycin or teicoplanin with gentamicin have good synergistic cover. In drug abusers, treatment for endocarditis should include cover for S. aureus and Gram-negative bacilli (eg, cloxacillin and pipercillin).

In the treatment of rarer causes of endocarditis, Coxiella may require doxycycline with cotrimoxazole or rifampicin. Candida and Aspergillus may respond to medical therapy (5-fluorouracil and amphotericin B, respectively), but, generally, all three of these infections respond poorly to medical therapy alone and require surgical intervention.

In the treatment of IE, from any source, fever may still be present 2 weeks after starting the appropriate treatment, even with drug-sensitive organisms. This could be due to the presence of an underlying large vegetation or abscess. If fever persists, the sensitivity of the infecting organism should be checked and drug levels monitored. Repeat echo should be performed to exclude increasing vegetation size or abscess formation. If, despite these measures, the fever remains, the possibility of antibiotic resistance should be considered and a further synergistic antimicrobial treatment may be required. A second site for fever should always be excluded.

**Surgical intervention**

Surgical intervention may be required in patients with persistent fever that is resistant to medical therapy. Surgery is also indicated in the following conditions:
• valve obstruction
• prosthetic-valve endocarditis caused by *S. aureus* or resistant organisms
• aortic or mitral regurgitation not responding to medical therapy
• paravalvular abscess
• development of an aneurysm of a sinus of Valsalva
• fungal endocarditis
• multiple embolic episodes
• progressive heart failure secondary to severe valve destruction
• oscillating vegetation of >1 cm

Surgery may involve not only valve replacement, but also aortic root replacement for aortic root abscesses. After the relevant surgical procedure, a full course of antibiotic eradication therapy should be administered.

**Prognosis**

With effective treatment, patients with IE have a 70% survival rate. The prognosis is worse if there is no identifiable organism or if there is a resistant organism. Fungal infections are associated with increased mortality, as is prosthetic valve endocarditis. Overall death rates are 20% for native valve endocarditis, 30% for staphyloccoccal infections, and 20%–30% for late prosthetic valve infection, despite full medical and surgical treatment. The most common cause of death is intractable heart failure.

**Prophylaxis**

All patients at risk for IE should receive antibiotic cover for invasive procedures (see Tables 2 and 3, overleaf). Spontaneous bacteremia is also common as a result of poor dental hygiene, and susceptible patients need to be made aware of this.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Agent(^a)</th>
<th>Regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard general prophylaxis</td>
<td>Amoxicillin</td>
<td>Adults: 2 g; children: 50 mg/kg orally 1 hour before procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to take oral medication</td>
<td>Ampicillin</td>
<td>Adults: 2 g IM or IV; children: 50 mg/kg IM or IV within 30 minutes before procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allergic to penicillin</td>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
<td>Adults: 600 mg; children: 20 mg/kg orally 1 hour before procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cephalexin(^b), cefadroxil(^b)</td>
<td>Adults: 2 g; children: 50 mg/kg orally 1 hour before procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Azithromycin, clarithromycin</td>
<td>Adults: 500 mg; children: 15 mg/kg orally 1 hour before procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allergic to penicillin and unable to take oral medications</td>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
<td>Adults: 600 mg; children: 20 mg/kg IV within 30 minutes before procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cefazolin(^b)</td>
<td>Adults: 1 g; children: 25 mg/kg IM or IV within 30 minutes before procedure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Prophylactic regimens for dental, oral, respiratory tract, or esophageal procedures. IM: intramuscularly; IV: intravenously. \(^a\)Total children’s dose should not exceed adult dose; \(^b\)cephalosporins should not be used in individuals with immediate-type hypersensitivity reaction (urticaria, angioedema, or anaphylaxis) to penicillins. Reproduced with permission from Lippincott Williams & Wilkins (Dajani AS, Taubert KA, Wilson W et al. Prevention of Bacterial Endocarditis: Recommendations by the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 1997;96:358–66).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Agents(^a)</th>
<th>Regimen(^b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| High-risk patients            | Ampicillin + gentamicin              | Adults: ampicillin 2 g IM or IV plus gentamicin 1.5 mg/kg (not to exceed 120 mg) within 30 minutes of starting the procedure; 6 hours later, ampicillin 1 g IM/IV or amoxicillin 1 g orally  
Children: ampicillin 50 mg/kg IM or IV (not to exceed 2 g) + gentamicin 1.5 mg/kg within 30 minutes of starting the procedure; 6 hours later, ampicillin 25 mg/kg IM/IV or amoxicillin 25 mg/kg orally |
| High-risk patients allergic to ampicillin/amoxicillin | Vancomycin + gentamicin              | Adults: vancomycin 1 g IV over 1–2 hours + gentamicin 1.5 mg/kg IV/IM (not to exceed 120 mg); complete injection/infusion within 30 minutes of starting the procedure  
Children: vancomycin 20 mg/kg IV over 1–2 hours + gentamicin 1.5 mg/kg IV/IM; complete injection/infusion within 30 minutes of starting the procedure |
| Moderate-risk patients        | Amoxicillin or ampicillin            | Adults: amoxicillin 2 g orally 1 hour before procedure, or ampicillin 2 g IM/IV within 30 minutes of starting the procedure  
Children: amoxicillin 50 mg/kg orally 1 hour before procedure, or ampicillin 50 mg/kg IM/IV within 30 minutes of starting the procedure |
| Moderate-risk patients allergic to ampicillin/amoxicillin | Vancomycin                           | Adults: vancomycin 1 g IV over 1–2 hours; complete infusion within 30 minutes of starting the procedure  
Children: vancomycin 20 mg/kg IV over 1–2 hours; complete infusion within 30 minutes of starting the procedure |

Table 3. Prophylactic regimens for genitourinary/gastrointestinal (excluding esophageal) procedures. IM: intramuscularly; IV: intravenously. \(^a\)Total children’s dose should not exceed adult dose; \(^b\)no second dose of vancomycin or gentamicin is recommended. Reproduced with permission from Lippincott Williams & Wilkins (Dajani AS, Taubert KA, Wilson W et al. Prevention of Bacterial Endocarditis: Recommendations by the American Heart Association. Circulation 1997;96:358–66).
Further reading


Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy

With a prevalence of only 0.2%, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) is rarely encountered by generalists. Most cases are identified by screening family members of known sufferers – 50% of cases are familial.

Background

HCM is a primary, usually familial disorder of cardiac muscle with complex pathophysiology, significant heterogeneity in its expression, and a diverse clinical course. It is defined as cardiac hypertrophy that cannot be explained by pressure or volume overload, and is probably the most common genetically transmitted heart disease. The clinical course is highly variable; some patients remain asymptomatic throughout life, whereas others die prematurely – either suddenly or from progressive heart failure. HCM is characterized by mutations in the DNA encoding cardiac contractile or energy-related proteins, predominantly the β-myosin heavy chain, α-tropomyosin, and cardiac troponin T (see Figure 1 and Table 1).

Despite dramatic improvements in the knowledge and understanding of HCM, challenges and controversies still exist regarding its diagnosis, etiology, natural history, and management. For example, many HCM patients do not, in fact, have left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH). The shifting understanding of this complex disease can make terminology difficult. However, “hypertrophic cardiomyopathy” is the preferred expression for this condition. This nomenclature avoids the term “idiopathic subaortic stenosis” or inclusion of the word “obstructive”, which imply left ventricular outflow tract obstruction (present in only 25% of cases). It also excludes secondary causes of LVH.

The classic features of HCM are asymmetrical LVH with a normal or small left ventricular cavity. However, wall thickness varies considerably. The majority of clearly identified patients have an unmistakably abnormal left ventricular mass. This averages at a septal thickness of 20–22 mm, but can be up to 60 mm (see Figure 2). This leaves a significant minority of patients in whom there will be diagnostic ambiguity with respect to cardiac morphology. In fact, the hallmark of the disease is
myocardial fiber disarray. Clearly, this cannot be a useful diagnostic marker during life, and increasing attention is being given to molecular genetic diagnostic tools. Regardless of the electrocardiogram (ECG) presentation, the prognosis for HCM patients can be unpredictable. Some with severe hypertrophy remain asymptomatic, while others with apparently less severe hypertrophy develop arrhythmias, increased ventricular stiffness, heart failure, or sudden death. Indeed, there can be considerable variation in phenotype within families (see Figure 2).

![Figure 1. Contractile proteins in the cardiac sarcomere.](image)

Figure 1. Contractile proteins in the cardiac sarcomere. The top chain represents actin; the bottom chain represents myosin. Contraction occurs when calcium binds the troponin complex, allowing myosin to bind to actin with the production of force: “Myosin rows the actin sea”. Reproduced with permission from Massachusetts Medical Society (Spirito P, Seidman CE, McKenna WJ et al. The management of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *N Engl J Med* 1997;336:775–85).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beta-myosin heavy chain</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myosin-binding protein C</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troponin T</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha-tropomyosin</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myosin light chain</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Mutations known to cause hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.
Clinical examination
HCM has classic clinical signs, most of which relate to outflow obstruction (hence their presence is not required for diagnosis). They are as follows:

- jerky pulse
- prominent “a” wave in jugular venous pressure (JVP)
- double apex beat
- S3
- S4
- late ejection quality systolic murmur over the aortic area that is increased by standing and decreased by squatting
- a pansystolic murmur at the apex (indicating mitral regurgitation [MR])

The ECG may show LVH and T-wave inversion. With progressive left ventricular disease, left bundle branch block (LBBB) may appear.

Echo is the test of choice. Left ventricular wall thickness is measured from M-mode traces (see Chapter 4, Understanding the echocardiogram). Left ventricular outflow tract velocities can be measured and pressure drop estimated by continuous-wave Doppler. Diastolic dysfunction is common in HCM.

Specialist management
Medical
The main aim of medical treatment is to limit the effects of outflow tract obstruction. Beta-blockers and/or rate limiting calcium-channel blockers, such as verapamil, can improve diastolic filling (by reducing heart rate), reduce exercise-related outflow obstruction, and reduce the possibility of arrhythmia. Amiodarone
and sotalol can prevent supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmia, but should only be used in patients with a previous episode.

**Dual-chamber pacing**

Patients who remain symptomatic despite drug therapy can have a DDD pacemaker inserted (see Chapter 8, Arrhythmia), set to a short atrioventricular (AV) delay. The effect of this is to pace the right ventricle each beat and induce an LBBB-type activation of the left ventricle, which reduces outflow obstruction by desynchronizing contraction of the septum and the posterior wall. Patients can be treadmill-tested to confirm that the AV delay is sufficiently short to maintain right ventricle capture at higher heart rates.

**Nonsurgical septal reduction**

A recent technique involving cardiac catheterization has been proposed as an alternative for outflow tract pressure gradient reduction and symptom improvement. This technique came to light following observations, in the early eighties, that upon balloon inflation in the left anterior descending (LAD) coronary artery there is a reduction of outflow tract velocities and gradients. The procedure involves balloon inflation in the proximal segment of the first septal perforator of the LAD and assessment of outflow tract gradient. If the gradient drops significantly, a small quantity of alcohol (3–5 mL) is injected down the cannulated artery, distal to the balloon, in an attempt to induce a localized proximal septal infarction. The velocities are then measured.

The stress-induced outflow tract gradient after dobutamine injection is also assessed, both before and after the procedure. If the results are not satisfactory, these steps are repeated while cannulating the second perforator of the LAD. Procedural success is always associated with significant myocardial enzyme rise and a fall in outflow tract velocities, development of significant conduction disturbance, and septal incoordinate relaxation. Mid- and long-term follow-up after nonsurgical septal reduction have proved promising in terms of a decrease in symptoms and maintained low outflow tract gradient.

**Surgery**

Until the last decade, the major nonmedical option for treating HCM with persistent symptoms was surgical myotomy/myectomy. In this procedure, which is also called the “Morrow procedure”, a small portion of the proximal septal myocardium is resected to widen the outflow tract. Mortality from this technique is now <2% and there is a subjective symptomatic improvement in 70% of patients. However, complications are common and for the majority of patients it results in complete LBBB or they require a permanent pacemaker for complete heart block. As a consequence, surgeons have explored other possibilities, such as
mitral valve replacement and anterior leaflet extension, to reduce MR, reduce outflow obstruction, and stiffen the anterior leaflet.

**Preparticipation screening for sport**

HCM is occasionally discovered during preparticipation screening for sport, and should be considered when a young athlete presents with voltage criteria LVH. In this situation, the question as to when to refer for echocardiography arises. The most common voltage criterion is that of Sokolow–Lyon (SV1 + RV5 > 3.5 mV) (see Chapter 3, Conquering the ECG). Although the vast majority of young athletes in this category will have a normal heart, most cardiologists would recommend that any young, normotensive patient who meets these voltage criteria should be referred for an echo.

The ECG and echo are the key diagnostic tools. However, the overall prevalence of relevant conditions (0.2%) makes these cost-ineffective. Approximately 200 screenings are required to detect one abnormality, while 200,000 are needed to prevent one death. Thus, it is important to maximize the information available from history and examination (see Table 2).

There is consensus that history and physical examination are the only cost-effective screening tools for sudden cardiac death in athletes. However, these are very poor at identifying the primary causes of sudden death:

- HCM in its nonobstructive form (~35%) produces no murmur (see Figure 3)
- coronary artery abnormalities (~20%) are not detectable by simple clinical examination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>History</strong></th>
<th><strong>Examination</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Family history of premature death</td>
<td>Auscultate the heart, both lying and standing, with particular attention to outflow murmurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family history of heart disease at age &lt;50 years</td>
<td>Assess radiofemoral delay to exclude coarctation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal history of murmur, hypertension, excessive fatigability, or syncope</td>
<td>Recognize the stigmata of Marfan’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal history of excessive or progressive shortness of breath or pain on exertion</td>
<td>Measure systemic blood pressure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.** Key points in history and examination for preparticipation screening in athletes.
ECG patterns are distinctly abnormal (LVH, inverted T waves, deep Q waves, axis deviation, or LBBB) in about 15% of athletes, and mildly abnormal (borderline LVH, flat T wave, long PR interval, right bundle branch block) in another 25%. Early repolarization may account for another 15%. Bradycardia <60 bpm is found in more than a third. Abnormalities are most common in males younger than 20 years who are involved in endurance sports such as cycling, rowing, and cross-country skiing. In one series, 5% of over 1,000 consecutively examined athletes had structural abnormalities such as HCM or dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM).

Dilated cardiomyopathy

DCM is a primary disease of the cardiac muscle and can be defined as left or right ventricular dilatation and failure in the absence of coronary artery disease, hypertension, valve disease, or congenital heart abnormality. Patients usually present with shortness of breath and signs of congestion in an identical way to heart failure of any other cause. There are many causes of DCM:

- alcohol
- familial
- myocarditis
- postradiation or chemotherapy (eg, adriamycin/doxorubicin)
- hemochromatosis
- thyrotoxicosis
- thiamine deficiency

Figure 3. Hypertrophic nonobstructive cardiomyopathy. Note the grossly hypertrophied interventricular septum.
Prognosis
The prognosis is variable according to the degree of ventricular damage. It is generally agreed that patients with resistant high filling pressures do badly. Those with biventricular dilatation and impairment of function do even worse.

Investigations
The ECG shows no specific signs: it may be normal or show conduction disturbances. Chest x-ray shows increased cardiothoracic ratio and pulmonary vascular congestion. Echo is the test of choice and will show a grossly dilated ventricle with thin walls and globally impaired systolic function. Disease progression results in functional MR and the development of left atrial dilatation. In rare cases, the disease solely affects the right heart. Cardiac catheterization is used to exclude coronary artery disease and measure intracardiac pressures.

Management
Management is as described for chronic heart failure (see Chapter 7, Heart failure).

Restrictive cardiomyopathy

Restrictive cardiomyopathy is a disease of the heart muscle that results in myocardial stiffness and an incompliant ventricle. Patients present with predominantly right-sided failure (gross peripheral edema, raised JVP, hepatomegaly) and a normal-sized heart. Classic clinical signs are rapid x and y descent of the JVP, and loud S3 and S4.

The most common causes are:

- hemochromatosis
- sarcoidosis
- amyloidosis
- carcinoid syndrome
- glycogen storage disease
- scleroderma
- endomyocardial fibrosis and eosinophilic heart disease

Investigations
The ECG can be a useful tool, as subendocardial fibrosis can result in conduction disturbances. In addition, amyloid heart disease presents with low voltages. However, echo enables diagnosis. Classic findings include:
• absence of ventricular dilatation or hypertrophy (common but not invariable)
• left ventricle and right ventricle systolic function are often normal
• there may be biatrial dilatation
• the myocardium may be speckled or echogenic
• the Doppler ventricular in-flow pattern exhibits a high E:A ratio (see Chapter 4, Understanding the echocardiogram)

The key differential diagnosis is constrictive pericarditis. This is an important distinction to make as constrictive pericarditis can be treated surgically.

**Management**
There is no specific medical treatment for restrictive cardiomyopathy. The main aim is to control symptoms of cardiac failure. In patients with high filling pressures, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors in particular have shown a significant beneficial effect in unloading the left ventricle and improving symptoms. Atrial fibrillation should be controlled with digoxin and a prophylactic anticoagulant is usually recommended.

Eosinophilic cardiomyopathy can be treated with steroids, cytotoxic drugs, and prophylactic anticoagulants for thromboembolism. Endomyocardial fibrosis that is not controlled by medical therapy may warrant surgical intervention for subendocardial decortication. Carcinoid syndrome may require tricuspid valve replacement (see Chapter 9, Valve disease).

**Further reading**


Aortic aneurysm

Aneurysms of the thoracic aorta (see Figure 1) are not as common as those affecting the abdominal portion, but carry a higher risk of rupture. Both share the same primary cause: atherosclerosis. In the past, ascending aortic aneurysms were typically caused by syphilis, but nowadays hypertension or Marfan’s syndrome are more likely to be responsible. Symptoms result from the acute painful tear felt as central chest pain, which radiates to the back, and from the compression of surrounding structures:

- dysphagia (esophagus)
- dyspnea (bronchi; pericardial effusion)
- upper thorax/neck swelling (superior vena cava)

Standard radiology and echocardiography can be useful in monitoring the progression of aneurysms. Computed tomography (CT) is the gold standard and should be carried out annually in patients with known disease that does not yet require surgery or percutaneous placement of an aortic prosthesis/stents. However, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is increasingly being used.

Management

The central feature of management is rigorous control of blood pressure (BP). Therapy should include a β-blocker and be aimed at keeping systolic pressure <120 mm Hg.

Marfan’s syndrome

Described by Bernard Marfan in 1896, this autosomal dominant single-gene disorder results from a mutation of the fibrillin gene on chromosome 15. The key clinical features are:

- arachnodactyly (long spindly fingers)
- high-arched palate
- pectus excavatum
ABRAHAM LINCOLN
Abraham Lincoln was both tall (6 ft 4 in) and thin (160–180 lb). He had long arms and legs, and large, narrow hands and feet. Contemporary descriptions of his appearance indicate that he was stoop-shouldered, loose-jointed, and walked with a shuffling gait. In addition, he wore eyeglasses to correct a visual problem. It is not surprising then that many have concluded that he suffered from Marfan’s syndrome. Certainly, he shared a great-great-grandfather with a man who had a confirmed diagnosis of Marfan’s. In fact, this observation, reported by Dr Harold Schwartz in 1959, was the beginning of a mystery that has taxed historians and doctors ever since. However, Lincoln showed few other signs of Marfan’s. He had visual problems, but examination of his eyeglasses reveals he was farsighted and not nearsighted – a classic symptom of Marfan’s. Also, a cast of his hands has shown that they were muscular and powerful, and not the slender hands of someone with Marfan’s syndrome. Although the fun of the mystery is often in the debate and not in the answer, this is one theory that could be tested: a limited amount of bone fragments and hair from Lincoln was retained by the attending physician at the time of his assassination. Molecular testing using these samples could end the debate in an instant.
• an armspan greater than height
• upward lens dislocation
• aortic root dilatation and aortic incompetence
• mitral valve prolapse

The key differential diagnosis is homocystinuria, a recessively inherited defect in amino-acid metabolism, which has similar skeletal features. Homocystinuria is associated with low IQ and typically causes downward dislocation of the lens. However, it does not affect the heart.

Marfan’s patients should undergo annual echo screening of the aortic root and prophylactic replacement should be considered when the diameter reaches 55 mm (a normal diameter is 40 mm). Beta-blockade can retard the rate of dilatation, but patients who do not have the replacement die in the fourth or fifth decade from aortic dissection or cardiac failure secondary to aortic regurgitation.

**Sinus of Valsalva**
A congenital aneurysm of the sinus of Valsalva is a rare cause of arteriovenous shunt. It is formed because of a weak connection between the aortic valve and the aortic fibrous ring. This enlarges during childhood and usually ruptures in adulthood into the right ventricle, creating a volume shunt from the left to the right side of the heart. The diagnosis is confirmed by aortography. Without surgical repair, biventricular failure results.

**Aortic dissection**
Dissection, which is usually caused by atherosclerosis, is the development of a tear in the aortic intima that creates a false lumen through the aortic media for a variable distance (see Figures 2 and 3).

---

**Figure 2.** The adventitia, media, and intima of the aortic wall.
Chapter 12

**Figure 3.** Classification of dissection.

**Figure 4.** Computed tomography scans showing dissection of the aorta.

**Figure 5.** Magnetic resonance images showing separation of the dissected membrane. AA: ascending aorta; F: false lumen; I: intimal flap; P: pulmonary artery; S: subclavian artery; T: true lumen.
Dissection is classified according to whether it includes the ascending aorta (type A) or not (type B) (see Figure 3). Type A dissection is a surgical emergency because of the high risk of proximal extension, rupture, and sudden death. If a type A dissection is confirmed by CT or MRI, the patient should be operated on immediately. The highly specialized repair operation can involve replacement of the aortic root with a vascular graft, reimplantation of the coronary arteries, and resuspension of the aortic valve. In some cases it may be necessary to replace the valve.

In contrast, type B dissection is managed medically by aggressive antihypertensive treatment. In the acute situation, the systolic BP should be lowered to <110 mm Hg using intravenous (IV) β-blockade (eg, labetalol). Beta-blockade, as well as reducing the BP, reduces the BP’s rate of rise and for this reason it is preferred to sodium nitroprusside as the first-line IV agent. If β-blockers are contraindicated then rate-limiting calcium-channel blockers, such as diltiazem or verapamil, can be used.
Dissection typically presents with a severe tearing central chest pain that radiates to the back. A patient with such a history should be referred urgently to a specialist center since the ascending aorta might be involved. Immediate investigations include:

- CT or MRI scan (see Figures 4 and 5, previous page)
- transesophageal echo to assess possible aortic regurgitation (see Figure 6, previous page)
- transthoracic echo for pericardial effusion
- preoperatively, coronary artery disease must be ruled out by coronary angiography

Figure 7. (a,b) Chest x-rays. A dissected aorta can be seen in (b) (arrow).

Figure 8. Chest x-ray showing extreme dissection of the aorta (arrows).
A physical examination can prove useful diagnostically, but should not delay the above emergency investigations. It should include:

- measurement of the BP in both arms (unequal BP is a sign, though not a reliable sign)
- documentation of all peripheral pulses (lack of peripheral pulses may be the only sign if the dissection spares the ascending aorta)
- close attention to heart sounds (aortic regurgitation and tamponade are possible with proximal extension)
- neurologic examination (hemiplegia or paraplegia can result from occlusion of the carotid arteries and anterior spinal arteries, respectively)

Other potentially useful investigations are:

- assessment of renal function, including urine microscopy and catheterization for accurate measurement of renal output
- a chest x-ray, which often shows a distended aorta or generalized widening of the mediastinum (see Figures 7 and 8)

**Further reading**


Pericarditis

A diagnosis of pericarditis (inflammation of the pericardium), though rare, should always be considered as a differential for ischemic heart pain. The key differentiating features are that the pain in pericarditis is altered by posture and can be exacerbated by deep inspiration. Classically, the patient will be found sitting forward and taking shallow breaths.

Pathophysiology

The pericardium has two layers: visceral and parietal. The visceral layer is closely apposed to the heart, whilst the fibrous parietal layer provides a more rigid outer shell to the pericardial cavity (see Figure 1). The normal volume of pericardial fluid is in the region of 50 mL.

Figure 1. The layers of pericardium. The visceral pericardium is a tissue paper-like layer, while the parietal pericardium is more rigid.
The causes of pericarditis are outlined in Table 1. Viral pericarditis is the most common type, but in many cases either the diagnosis is never made or the viral infection is never identified. Another common presentation is characteristic pain 3–14 days postmyocardial infarction (MI) or postcardiac surgery, which tends to be self-limiting. Relapsing episodes are referred to as Dressler’s syndrome or postcardiotomy syndrome, and are thought to represent an autoimmune process.

Investigations

Examination

Auscultation may reveal a pericardial rub, which is sufficient, but not necessary, to make the diagnosis. It can easily be distinguished from a pleural rub by asking the patient to hold their breath.

Electrocardiography

The classic sign of pericarditis – a concave upwards (“saddle”) ST-segment elevation throughout the 12 leads – is, of course, rare. However, some form of electrocardiogram (ECG) abnormality is common. These changes are either present in all 12 leads or in leads that do not correspond to the territory perfused by a single coronary artery. Low voltages suggest the possibility of effusion.

Chest x-ray

A chest x-ray (CXR) can help to rule out a tuberculous cause of pericarditis and exclude significant effusion.

Echocardiography

Echocardiography is helpful mainly if there is a suspicion of effusion or tamponade.

Blood tests

Blood tests for immune markers, such as the antinuclear cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA), should be carried out in any patient with confirmed pericarditis. Acute and convalescent viral titers can also be requested, but rarely alter management.

Table 1. Causes of pericarditis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of pericarditis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Postmyocardial infarction/postcardiac surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral (Coxsackie B, influenza)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastatic malignancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberculous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 13

198
Management
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs are the treatment of choice for pericarditis. They relieve both the inflammatory process and the pain. Steroids may be required in serositis pericarditis, whereas pericarditis with a suspicious CXR and constitutional symptoms should prompt investigation for tuberculosis.

Pericardial effusion and tamponade
As with pleural effusion, the key defining presentation of pericardial effusion is the rate of fluid accumulation. Any cause of pericarditis can result in a significant accumulation of serous fluid, while hemopericardium (a collection of blood in the pericardial sac surrounding the heart) can be caused by trauma, type 1 dissection of the aorta, and cardiac rupture. The key feature is not the overall volume of fluid (even hundreds of milliliters can be asymptomatic if accumulated over a long enough time), but the rate of rise – as with pleural effusion, removal of even a small amount of fluid can result in significant benefit.

Small, asymptomatic effusions can often be left to resorb on their own. This usually requires repeat echo at regular intervals to ensure that resorption has occurred. Larger effusions bounded by the tough parietal pericardium can compromise the low pressure right heart – this results in tamponade (see Figure 2).

Examination
Cardiac tamponade is a medical emergency. It is associated with a characteristic jugular venous pressure (JVP). Kussmaul’s sign describes a raised JVP that rises further on inspiration, while Friedrich’s sign describes a steep x/y descent (although, in reality at the bedside, the waves are hard to discern). The heart sounds are quiet and there may be a rub.

Figure 2. An extreme form of pericardial effusion, known as a “swinging heart”. The arrow indicates the effusion.
A characteristic of cardiac tamponade is pulsus paradoxus, which is not paradoxical at all, but an exaggeration of the normal drop in systolic pressure on inspiration – >10 mm Hg is abnormal. To test for it, inflate the cuff to just above systolic pressure then slowly deflate, stopping each 5 mm Hg for a full inspiration–expiration cycle. Listen for the point at which the beating becomes continuous throughout the breathing cycle.

**Electrocardiography**
Low-voltage ECG and beat-to-beat variation in R-wave amplitude are characteristic.

**Chest x-ray**
CXRs show a globular, “boot-shaped” heart.

**Echocardiography**
Echo is the investigation of choice. The key observation is diastolic collapse of the right atrium and ventricle. It demands urgent pericardiocentesis.

**Constrictive pericarditis**
In constrictive pericarditis, the pericardium becomes rigid and fibrotic, adheres to the myocardium, and limits its function. It most commonly follows tuberculous pericarditis or hemopericardium, but can result from any cause of pericarditis.
The classic clinical picture is:

- significant ascites
- raised JVP with positive Kussmaul and Friedrich’s signs
- hepatomegaly
- pulsus paradoxus (but usually less severe than in tamponade)
- pericardial knock (high-pitched early diastolic added sound)
- calcification visible on the lateral CXR

The most difficult differential diagnosis is restrictive cardiomyopathy. However, the left ventricular function is usually preserved in constrictive pericarditis, and filling pressures are raised. The only treatment for constrictive pericarditis is surgical excision of the pericardium.
Chapter 14

Adult congenital heart disease

Congenital abnormalities of the heart and cardiovascular system are reported in almost 1% of live births (see Figure 1) and about half of these children need medical or surgical help during infancy. In the first decade, a further 25% require surgery to maintain or improve their life. Only 10% survive to adolescence without surgery. Of these 10%, however, many live a normal life for years before their abnormality is discovered.

Recognizing adult congenital heart disease

There are a few signs that should alert generalists to the possibility of congenital heart disease:

- murmurs, especially continuous – there are few degenerative diseases that produce continuous murmurs
- cyanosis, clubbing – unless there is coexistent lung disease, a patient with a murmur and cyanosis should be referred for echocardiography
- right bundle branch block (RBBB) – this occurs in 1% of the middle-aged population without disease. When combined with a murmur, the patient should be referred for echocardiography

In most cases, suspicion of congenital heart disease leads to a cardiology referral. However, an awareness of the possible diagnoses will help your referral.

Ventricular septal defect

Ventricular septal defect (VSD) (see Figures 2 and 3) is the most common congenital heart defect. Symptoms depend on the size of the defect and the age of the patient. Small VSDs are usually asymptomatic and compatible with a normal life (in fact, about 40% close spontaneously in early childhood). Large VSDs cause cardiac failure in the second or third month after birth. If a large shunt does not produce symptoms during infancy, there is usually little disturbance until late adolescence or early adult life when the patient develops high pulmonary vascular resistance, breathlessness, fatigue, and cyanosis. There is progression to effort syncope, recurrent hemoptysis, and heart failure.
Recognizing VSD

In VSD patients, the apex beat may be hyperdynamic and there could be a systolic thrill. The classic sign is a loud pansystolic murmur, often accompanied by a mid diastolic murmur at the apex (due to high flow through the mitral valve) (see Table 1). In patients with raised pulmonary vascular resistance, right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH) is evident and the pulmonary second sound might be accentuated, followed by the early diastolic murmur of pulmonary regurgitation.

With small VSDs, the electrocardiogram (ECG) is normal. With larger ones, there is evidence of biventricular enlargement (tall R waves and deep S waves in leads V1–V6), especially when pulmonary vascular resistance is high. Similarly, with a small defect the chest x-ray (CXR) is normal, but with a large shunt there is cardiomegaly and prominence of the pulmonary vessels.

Large shunts should be closed surgically. However, if pulmonary hypertension has developed, surgery is usually contraindicated as closing it may worsen the pulmonary hypertension.

The main complication of VSD is infective endocarditis. Vegetations may appear at the tricuspid valve, opposite or around the defect, or on the aortic valve. In certain lesions, aortic incompetence may develop due to loss of support of the valve.
The prognosis for adults with uncomplicated VSD is good. Few patients have defects large enough to cause serious hemodynamic problems, but all are exposed to the risk of infective endocarditis.

**Atrial septal defect**

Three types of atrial septal defect (ASD) can occur:

- ostium secundum is the most common type (70%). It can be large, but usually does not affect the atroventricular valves (see Figures 3 and 4)
- ostium primum – the hole is situated close to the atroventricular valves and can be associated with an atroventricular septal defect
sinus venosus is a defect situated near the entrance of the superior vena cava (SVC) or inferior vena cava to the right atrium. It is unusual and is often associated with partial anomalous pulmonary venous drainage (usually drainage of the right upper lobe into the SVC).

**Pathophysiology**
The shunt of blood from the left atrium to the right atrium results in:

- increased volume load and dilatation of the right atrium and right ventricle (RV)
- increased pulmonary blood flow and enlargement of the pulmonary arteries
- increase in size of the pulmonary veins
- reduced filling of the left ventricle (LV) and aorta
Over time, the aorta and LV shrink, and pulmonary vascular resistance increases and causes Eisenmenger syndrome (see below).

**Recognizing ASD**
Most patients with secundum ASD remain asymptomatic throughout their thirties, but visit their doctor in middle-age with the onset of breathlessness and fatigue (note the nonspecific signs). Symptoms are usually progressive and worsened by the development of atrial arrhythmias. Patients with primum ASD tend to present earlier and with more severe symptoms.

The classic sign of ASD is wide, fixed splitting of the second heart sound, together with a systolic murmur due to high flow across the pulmonary valve (see Table 1). Primum ASD may be accompanied by mitral regurgitation.

ECG might indicate RBBB and either RVH and right axis deviation (secundum) or left axis deviation (primum) (see Table 1). CXR may show cardiomegaly with a prominent pulmonary trunk.

**Management**
ASDs that are large enough to give clear physical signs should be closed. Closure of an ostium secundum defect is relatively easy and carries a low mortality rate. Correction of an ostium primum defect, with its associated anomalies, is more difficult and carries a higher mortality rate. More recently, percutaneous device closure of small and moderate size ASDs has been possible. In this procedure, a “butterfly” device (eg, the Clamshell occluder, the Starflex occluder, or the Amplatzer occluder) is manipulated noninvasively into the heart and “opened”, whereupon it grasps the defect on either side and closes it (see Figures 5 and 6).

Primum ASD requires prophylaxis for infective endocarditis, while secundum ASD does not.

**Eisenmenger syndrome**
This is the name given to reversal in the direction of a cardiac shunt caused by the development of pulmonary hypertension. It applies regardless of whether the shunt is atrial or ventricular. Initial flow is always from high pressure (left) to low pressure (right), but pulmonary pressure can rise above systemic pressure and cause a reversal of flow.

Signs of pulmonary hypertension are RVH, pulmonary systolic click, and loud pulmonary valve closure. CXR shows large main pulmonary arteries and branches with peripheral pruning. After the development of Eisenmenger physiology, only heart–lung transplantation is of value in management.
Figure 5. The Clamshell occluder for closure of an atrial septal defect. IVC: inferior vena cava; LA: left atrium; RA: right atrium.

Figure 6. The Amplatzer occluder (a) before and (b) after deployment.
Bicuspid aortic valve
Bicuspid aortic valves often function normally throughout most of a patient’s life. However, fibrosis and calcification ultimately lead to aortic stenosis (see Chapter 9, Valve disease) and an eventual requirement for surgical correction.

Coarctation of the aorta
Coarctation of the aorta is a narrowing of the lumen, usually just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery (see Figure 7). Most commonly, the patient presents in their twenties or thirties, usually with hypertension. Without surgery, 50% die before the age of 30 years. Potential treatments include resection of the narrowed segment with end-to-end anastomosis, repair involving the subclavian artery, and balloon angioplasty – the role of which remains controversial. Hypertension, which is often the presenting feature, must be aggressively treated both before and after surgery (it commonly persists).

Pulmonary valve stenosis
Patients with mild to moderate pulmonary stenosis usually remain asymptomatic until the onset of atrial flutter/fibrillation or right heart failure, which lead to breathlessness, ascites, peripheral edema, and a visit to the doctor. Fatigue, slight dyspnea, and effort syncope occur with severe narrowing. The physical signs depend on the severity of the obstruction and secondary effects on RV function. In severe stenosis, the arterial pulse is small and the jugular venous pulse exhibits a large “a” wave. On palpation, there is nearly always a systolic thrill in the second left intercostal space and there is a left parasternal heave. An early systolic
“ejection” click and a loud ejection murmur are best heard in the second intercostal space. The second sound is normal in mild cases, but in more severe cases it is widely split and the second (pulmonary) element is soft. ECG shows RVH in severe stenosis, while CXR shows a dilated pulmonary trunk with oligemic lung fields. Balloon valvotomy is indicated in severe pulmonary stenosis. Surgical valvotomy is an alternative.

**Patent ductus arteriosus**

Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) describes a preservation of the connection between the pulmonary artery and the aorta that exists in the fetus (see Figure 8). Since aortic diastolic pressure is higher than pulmonary artery systolic pressure, there is continuous flow into the pulmonary circulation, creating the characteristic continuous (“machinery”) murmur, heard best just below the left clavicle. In hemodynamically insignificant lesions (>50% of cases), patients are asymptomatic. Patients with bigger shunts develop cardiac failure at an age that depends on the severity of the lesion. Eisenmenger syndrome can occur with PDA. Treatment is surgical closure of the duct; this can be carried out percutaneously.

**Fallot’s tetralogy**

Fallot’s tetralogy is one of the causes of cyanotic congenital heart disease. The features derive from an abnormally positioned aorta that “over-rides” the interventricular septum (see Figure 9). This causes:

- perimembranous VSD
- RV outflow obstruction (pulmonary stenosis)
- RVH

The chief symptom is cyanosis on exercise. Children typically “squat” for relief of dyspnea after exercise (almost pathognomonic). Chest pain, arrhythmia, and congestive heart failure are more common in adults than in children. Clubbing is common. Surgical correction usually involves resection of the hypertrophied RV infundibulum and VSD closure with incorporation of the aorta into the RV. Adult Fallot’s patients often suffer impaired exercise capacity due to poor RV function.

**Transposition of the great arteries**

In transposition of the great arteries (TGA), the RV connects to the aorta and the LV connects to the pulmonary artery (see Figure 10). The result, following peripartum closure of the foramen ovale, is two parallel circulations – a physiology that is not compatible with life. The neonate would die instantly were it not for the common coexistence of a patent foramen ovale, ASD, VSD, or PDA. In infants, an
improvement in symptoms can be achieved by creating a large defect in the atrial septum to allow mixing of the blood between systemic and pulmonary circulations (Rashkind’s procedure – see Figure 11). This is performed by passing a balloon catheter into the left atrium via the right atrium. After inflation, the balloon catheter is pulled back forcefully into the right atrium, creating a tear in the septum. This procedure is usually effective in the neonatal period and allows the child to live until the latter part of the first year of life, when the Mustard operation can be performed. This involves rerouting venous return by inserting an intra-atrial baffle. The definitive treatment is the arterial switch operation, in which the arteries are switched back to their appropriate ventricles. The biggest challenge with this procedure is reattaching the coronary arteries, the anatomical organization of which is variable in TGA. In addition, the “low pressure” LV must take on filling of the systemic circulation.

**Ebstein’s anomaly**

Ebstein’s anomaly is the downward displacement of a portion of the tricuspid valve with atrialization of a large part of the RV (see Figure 12). There is often an associated ostium secundum ASD. The atrialized portion of the ventricle hinders rather than helps the forward flow of blood and there is tricuspid regurgitation. Occasionally Ebstein’s anomaly is asymptomatic, but it generally presents in childhood or early adulthood with dyspnea, fatigue, signs of tricuspid regurgitation, and right-sided cardiac failure. Patients with Ebstein’s anomaly require prophylaxis for endocarditis.
Figure 9. Fallot’s tetralogy with an “over-riding aorta”.

Figure 10. Transposition of the great arteries (right-hand image).
Figure 11. Balloon atrial septostomy – Rashkind’s procedure. ASD: atrial septal defect.

Figure 12. Ebstein’s anomaly.
Further reading


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1D</td>
<td>one dimensional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2D</td>
<td>two dimensional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A wave</td>
<td>atrial wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABPM</td>
<td>ambulatory blood pressure measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACE</td>
<td>angiotensin-converting enzyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEI</td>
<td>angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACS</td>
<td>acute coronary syndromes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADH</td>
<td>antidiuretic hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>atrial fibrillation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AICD</td>
<td>automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>alanine aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANCA</td>
<td>antinuclear cytoplasmic antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>aortic regurgitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARB</td>
<td>angiotensin receptor blocker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>aortic stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASD</td>
<td>atrial septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AST</td>
<td>aspartate aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AV</td>
<td>atrioventricular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVN</td>
<td>atrioventricular node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVNRT</td>
<td>atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVR</td>
<td>aortic valve replacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bpm</td>
<td>beats per minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CABG</td>
<td>coronary artery bypass grafting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>coronary artery disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFM</td>
<td>color-flow mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHD</td>
<td>coronary heart disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHF</td>
<td>chronic heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CK-MB</td>
<td>creatine kinase myocardial band fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS</td>
<td>central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPR</td>
<td>cardiopulmonary resuscitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP</td>
<td>C-reactive protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CW</td>
<td>continuous wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cx</td>
<td>circumflex artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CXR</td>
<td>chest x-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>direct current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCM</td>
<td>dilated cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E wave</td>
<td>early wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED</td>
<td>erectile dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDV</td>
<td>end diastolic volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEL</td>
<td>external elastic lamina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF</td>
<td>ejection fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESD</td>
<td>end systolic dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>erythrocyte sedimentation rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFR</td>
<td>glomerular filtration rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GP</td>
<td>glycoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HACEK</td>
<td><em>Haemophilus parainfluenza, Haemophilus aphrophilus, Actinobacillus (Haemophilus) actinomycetemcomitans, Cardiobacterium hominis, the Eikenella species, and the Kingella species</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCM</td>
<td>hypertrophic cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDL</td>
<td>high-density lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIT</td>
<td>heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMG-CoA</td>
<td>hydroxymethylglutaryl coenzyme A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IABP</td>
<td>intra-aortic balloon pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICH</td>
<td>intracranial hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS</td>
<td>intercostal space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEL</td>
<td>internal elastic lamina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IM</td>
<td>intramuscular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INR</td>
<td>international normalized ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>intravenous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>inferior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVDA</td>
<td>intravenous drug abuser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVP</td>
<td>jugular venous pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>left atrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAD</td>
<td>left anterior descending artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBBB</td>
<td>left bundle branch block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH</td>
<td>lactate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>low-density lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIMA</td>
<td>left internal mammary artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLSE</td>
<td>left lower sternal edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP</td>
<td>lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP(a)</td>
<td>lipoprotein little a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPL</td>
<td>lipoprotein lipase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>left ventricle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVESD</td>
<td>left ventricular end-systolic dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVH</td>
<td>left ventricular hypertrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET</td>
<td>metabolic unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR</td>
<td>mitral regurgitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRA</td>
<td>magnetic resonance angiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>mitral stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>mitral valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVA</td>
<td>mitral valve area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVP</td>
<td>mitral valve prolapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NYHA</td>
<td>New York Heart Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCI</td>
<td>percutaneous coronary intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDA</td>
<td>persistent ductus arteriosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET</td>
<td>positron emission tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTCA</td>
<td>percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PW</td>
<td>pulsed wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QTc</td>
<td>corrected QT interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>right atrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAD</td>
<td>right axis deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBBB</td>
<td>right bundle branch block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCA</td>
<td>right coronary artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIMA</td>
<td>right internal mammary artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV</td>
<td>right ventricle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RVH</td>
<td>right ventricular hypertrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>sinoatrial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN</td>
<td>sinoatrial node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLE</td>
<td>systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SND</td>
<td>sinus node dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPECT</td>
<td>single photon emission computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>sinus rhythm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVC</td>
<td>superior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVT</td>
<td>supraventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>technetium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEE</td>
<td>transesophageal echocardiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGA</td>
<td>transposition of the great arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMI</td>
<td>Thrombosis in Myocardial Infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TM</td>
<td>tunica media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF</td>
<td>tumor necrosis factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tPA</td>
<td>tissue plasminogen activator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td>tricuspid regurgitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLDL</td>
<td>very low-density lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VO₂ max</td>
<td>maximum rate of oxygen consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSD</td>
<td>ventricular septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT</td>
<td>ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WPW</td>
<td>Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

References to figures are in bold
References to tables and boxed material are in italics
(except where there is textual reference on the same page)

A
A waves 8, 9, 40
abbreviations 214–18
abciximab 64
accelerated phase hypertension 90–1
acute coronary syndromes 46
  assessment 68, 69
  treatment 69–73
added heart sounds 11
  associations in clinical examination 12, 13
  relative positions 11
adenosine challenge 125, 128
adhesion molecules 72
alanine aminotransferase (AST) 68
alpha-adrenoceptor antagonists 85, 87
ambulatory blood pressure measurement (ABPM) 81
American Heart Association
  life-support algorithms 4
  risk factors for CAD 48
amiloride 103
amiodarone
  arrhythmia 106, 141, 142
  hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183–4
  tachycardia 72
  ventricular 128, 129
amlodipine 54
amoxicillin/ampicillin 177, 178
Amplatzer occluder 207, 208
aneurysms
  aortic 189–91
  mycotic 168
  sinus of Valsalva 191
angina 47
  pharmacological management 54–7
  silent 48
  specialist management
    assessment 57–63
    treatment 63–7
  stable 46
symptoms 47
unstable 46, 47
variant 48
angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors
acute coronary syndromes 72–3
and aspirin 106
heart failure 101, 104, 106
hypertension 85, 86, 87, 88
recommended procedure for starting 104
angiotensin type 1 receptor blockers (ARBs)
heart failure 106
hypertension 85, 86, 87
annuloplasty 162
antiarrhythmic drugs 106, 141, 142
antibiotics
infective endocarditis 173, 174–5
prophylaxis 176, 177–8, 207, 211
pacemaker infection 138
pregnancy 164
anticoagulation 54, 71, 131, 132, 134, 156, 164
antihypertensives 82–8
centrally-acting 86
mechanisms 83
antithrombotic therapy 64
aorta 37, 191
aortic aneurysm 189–91
thoracic 189, 191
aortic dissection 191–5
classification 192, 193
examination 195
imaging 192, 193, 194
investigations 194, 195
management 193
presentation 194
aortic regurgitation 149–52
acute 150
asymptomatic patients 152
chronic
causes 150–1
treatment 151–2
common associations 12
echocardiography 41
in pregnancy 164
pulse 7
signs 149–50
aortic root replacement 176, 193
aortic sclerosis 146
aortic stenosis
causes 146
common associations 12
echocardiography 41
Index

investigation/management 147–9
natural history 148
in pregnancy 164
pulse 7
signs 146–7
treatment 149
valve replacement 148
aortic valve, bicuspid 204, 209
aortic valve replacement (AVR) 148, 149, 151
apex beat
abnormalities 9–10
associations in clinical examination 12, 13
location 9
arrhythmia 111–43
antiarrhythmic drugs 106, 141, 142
diagnosis, possible 112
pulse 112
and thrombolysis 72
see also specific conditions
aspartate aminotransferase (AST) 68
aspirin
acute coronary syndromes 69
angina 54
atrial fibrillation 133
chronic heart failure 106
mitral valve prolapse 162
asthma 125
atenolol 141
atherectomy 64
atherosclerosis see coronary artery disease
atrial fibrillation 130–4
bradyarrhythmia 118
classification 130
ECG 22, 23, 130, 131
history 134
incidence/causes 130
investigations 133
management
chronic 131
new directions 134
pharmacological 131, 132
surgery 134
management of new patient 130–3
pacing 136, 136
permanent 133
presentation 130
with pulmonary stenosis 209
pulse 7
in restrictive cardiomyopathy 188
atrial flutter 134
ECG 22, 23, 135
with pulmonary stenosis 209
atrial septal defect 205–9
  characteristics 206
  common associations 13
  incidence 204
  management 207
  pathophysiology 206–7
  signs/symptoms 207
atrial tachycardia 123, 124
atrioventricular (AV) block 117–18
  ECG 25
  electrophysiology 141
  first-degree 118, 119
  second-degree 7, 118, 119, 136
  third-degree (complete heart block) 118, 119, 135, 136
atrioventricular (AV) node 112
atrioventricular node re-entrant tachycardia (AVNRT) 124–5
  ECG 125
  electrophysiology 141
  mechanisms 126
atropine 3, 113
auscultation 10–11
Austin Flint murmur 150
automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator (AICD) 129, 139–40
azithromycin 32, 177

B
balloon angioplasty 63, 65, 209
balloon pump, intra-aortic 157
  counterpulsation 99
  insertion 99
balloon septostomy 211, 213
balloon valvotomy 149, 164
beating heart surgery 66
bendrofluazide 84, 87, 103
benzothiazepines 84
beta-agonists 94, 95, 98
beta-blockers
  acute coronary syndromes 69, 70, 72–3
  angina 54
  aortic dissection 193
  aortic regurgitation 150
  arrhythmia 141, 142
  atrial fibrillation 133
  heart failure 101, 104–5, 106
  hypertension 83–4, 86, 87, 88
  hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183
  syncope 117
  tachyarrhythmia 123, 125
  toxicity 118
Bezold–Jarisch reflex 116, 117
bicuscud aortic valve 204, 209
bifascicular block 121
bisferiens pulse 7
blood flow
  assessment 63, 64
  exercise-induced changes 52
  perfusion imaging 60
  velocity 36
blood pressure
  basic science 90
  guidelines 77
  heart failure 98
  measurement 78
    24-hour ambulatory 81
  see also hypertension
blood pressure
breathing and hypertension 78
blood pressure monitoring
blood vessels, normal 73
Bonet, T 102
"boot-shaped" heart 200
bounding pulse 7
bradycardia 111–19
  in atrial fibrillation 118
  atrioventricular (AV) block 117–18
    classification 118, 119
  carotid sinus syndrome 114
  causes 113
  pacing 135, 136, 136
  sinus node dysfunction (SND) 113–14
  syncope 114
    disturbances leading to 115
    evaluation 114–15, 116
    malignant vasovagal 116–17
    patterns 116
  treatment 113
Bruce exercise protocol 57, 58
bumetanide 103
bundle branch block 120–2
  ECG 26, 27, 30, 120
  fascicular block 120–1
    nonspecific intraventricular conduction defect 122
bundle of His 18, 112, 120, 121
bundle of Kent 125–7
bupropion 49
  "butterfly" occluding devices 207, 208

C
  cachexia 5
  CAD see coronary artery disease
  caffeine and hypertension 78, 82
calcification, valve 153

calcium-channel blockers
  - acute coronary syndromes 73
  - angina 54
  - aortic dissection 193
  - atrial fibrillation 133
  - hypertension 84, 87, 88
  - hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183
  - toxicity 118

calcium levels
  - in atherosclerotic plaque 62
  - hypertension 80

calcium sensitizers 106
captopril 101
carcinoid syndrome 188
cardiac arrest
  - causes 2, 3
  - electrophysiology 141
  - life-support algorithms 1–3
cardiac catheterization 63–6, 69
  - aortic stenosis 149
  - complications 65
  - history 63
  - hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 184
  - mortality 66

cardiac markers see markers
cardiac rehabilitation 74, 75
cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT) 107
cardiac tamponade 199–200
  - examination 199–200
  - imaging 200
  - pulse 7
cardiogenic shock
  - management 99
  - and PTCA 70
cardiomegaly 98
cardiomyopathy see dilated cardiomyopathy; hypertrophic cardiomyopathy; restrictive cardiomyopathy
cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) 2, 3
cardiovascular examinations see examinations, cardiovascular
cardioversion
  - chemical 133
  - direct current (DC) 127, 133, 134
  - implantable cardioverter defibrillators 139–40
  - spontaneous 130–1
carotid sinus massage 124
carotid sinus syndrome 114, 136
catheterization see cardiac catheterization
cefadroxil 177
cefazolin 177
cephalexin 177
chemokines 52, 72
chest leads see under electrocardiography
chest pain
  atypical 47
  differentiation 47
  investigations 53
  likelihood of CAD 59
chest X-ray
  aortic dissection 194
  cardiac tamponade 200
  cardiomegaly 98
  coronary artery disease 54
  dilated cardiomyopathy 187
  heart failure 93, 96, 97, 98
  pericarditis 198
  pleural effusion 97, 98
  pulmonary stenosis 210
  ventricular septal defect 204
cholesterol
  and coronary artery disease 52
  as risk factor 48, 49, 50–1
  synthesis/transport 55, 56
cholestyramine 56
chronotropic incompetence 136
chylomicrons 55, 56
Clamshell occluder 207, 208
clarithromycin 32, 177
clindamycin 32, 177
clonidine 85, 86
clopidogrel 54, 64, 69
cloxacillin (flucloxacillin) 138, 175
clubbing 5, 6, 167, 203, 210
coarctation of aorta 172, 204, 209
collapsing pulse 7
complete heart block 118, 119, 135, 136
computed tomography (CT) 192
congenital bicuspid disease 164
congenital heart disease 203–14
  atrial septal defect 13, 204, 205–9
  bicuspid aortic valve 204
  children 203
coarctation of aorta 172, 204, 209
Ebstein’s anomaly 162, 211, 213
Fallot’s tetralogy 204, 210, 212
patent ductus arteriosus 7, 13, 204, 210
pulmonary stenosis 13, 204, 209–10
right bundle branch block 203
  signs 6, 203
  transposition of the great arteries 204, 210–11, 212
  ventricular septal defect 13, 157, 172, 203–5
Conn’s syndrome 80
constrictive pericarditis 200–1
contractile proteins 181, 182
contrast echocardiography 38–9
corneal arcus 6
coronary angiography (the first example of) 66
coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) 66, 67
coronary artery disease (atherosclerosis) 45–76, 189, 191
assessment 47–8
background 45–6
diagnostic algorithm 59, 61
door-to-needle time 53
initiation 72
investigations 53–4
management 48–57
pharmacological management 54–7
presentations 46
risk factors 48–53
American Heart Association 48
European Society of Cardiology 49
risk estimation 53
risk tables 50–1, 53
specialist management
assessment 57–63
evidence base 67
treatment 63–7
see also acute coronary syndromes; angina
Corrigan’s sign 149
cotrimoxazole 175
Coumadin see warfarin
creatine kinase 68, 69
creatine kinase myocardial band fraction (CKMB) 68, 69
cyanosis 203, 210
cyanotic heart disease 172, 210

d
de Musset, A 161
de Musset’s sign 149
depolarization 18, 20
diabetes 48, 51, 88
therapy 72
diastolic dysfunction 40
diet 52, 75, 82
digoxin/digitalis 107
atrial fibrillation 133
heart failure 105, 106
mechanism of action 105
toxicity 30, 118
dihydropyridines 54, 73, 84
dilated cardiomyopathy 186–7
diltiazem
acute coronary syndromes 69
angina 54
aortic dissection 193
arrhythmia 141
hypertension 84, 86
dimensions, intracardiac 39
disopyramide 117, 129, 141
diuretics
  heart failure 102, 103
  hypertension 84, 87, 88
diving reflex 125
dobutamine 60, 107, 150, 157, 184
dopamine 150
Doppler imaging 36–8
  aortic stenosis 147–9
  atrial septal defect 206
  color-flow mapping 38
  continuous-wave 37
  normal values 39
  pulsed-wave 37, 40
doxazosin 85, 87
doxycycline 175
Dressler’s syndrome 198
drug abuse, intravenous 162, 169, 175
drug-eluting stents 63
drug-induced abnormalities of ECG 29, 30, 32
drug toxicity 118
Duchenne de Boulogne, GBA 24
Duke criteria 170
Duke risk score 60
Duroziez’s sign 149
dyspnea 48, 95, 108
  acute nocturnal 95
  after exercise 210

E
E waves 40
E:A ratios 39, 40
Ebstein’s anomaly 162, 211, 213
echocardiography 35–43
  aortic dissection 193
  aortic stenosis 147–9
  applications 39–42
  atrial septal defect 206
  background 35
  cardiac tamponade 200
  contrast 38–9
  dilated cardiomyopathy 187
  EF measurements 100
  fractional shortening 39
  heart failure 93, 97, 100
  hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183
imaging modes 35–8

see also M-mode imaging; two-dimensional imaging

infective endocarditis 42, 174, 175
mitral regurgitation 157
mitral stenosis 155
mitral valve vegetation 158, 172
normal values 39
pericarditis 198
restrictive cardiomyopathy 187–8
syncope 115
transesophageal (TEE) 38
views 35, 36

see also stress echocardiography

Einthoven, W 25
Eisenmenger syndrome 207, 210
ejection click 11, 147, 210
elderly patients
aortic stenosis 146
hypertension 87–8
valve replacement 149
electrocardiography (ECG) 15–33
aortic stenosis 146
atrial fibrillation 131
atrial flutter 135
atrial tachycardia 124
AV block 119
AV re-entrant tachycardia 125
axis calculation 22–3
bundle branch block 120
cardiac tamponade 200
carrying out 15
coronary artery disease 53–4
discovery 25
electrophysiological studies 140, 141, 142
exercise ECG see exercise electrocardiography
general principles 15, 16
heart failure 96
history

discovery 25
dog demonstrating ECG 18
first resuscitation 24
lettering system 33
hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183
interpretation 21–2
leads
attachment sites 16
chest 17, 20
definitions 15
limb 16, 17

respective views of heart 17
left axis deviation 122
mitral stenosis 155
pacemakers 139
pericarditis 198
planes of view 17
pulmonary stenosis 210
rate/rhythm 22
restrictive cardiomyopathy 187
right axis deviation 123
syncope 114–15
trace 19–23
  basic pattern 19
  drug-induced abnormalities 29
  lettering system 33
  normal 21
  pattern combinations 30
  see also specific segments/waves
variations
  normal 24
  pathological 25–33
  ventricular septal defect 204
  wave direction/size 21
  see also exercise electrocardiography
electron beam computed tomography 62
electrophysiological studies 140–1
  indications 141
embolism sources, cardiac 42
end-organ damage in hypertension 80
endocarditis see infective endocarditis
endomyocardial fibrosis 188
endothelin antagonists 106
energy-related proteins 181
enterococci 170, 171
eosinophilic cardiomyopathy 188
eptifibatide 64
erectile dysfunction 88–9
esmolol 125
European Society of Cardiology
  risk factors for cardiovascular disease 78
  risk factors for coronary artery disease 49
examinations, cardiovascular 5–14, 47
  auscultation 10–11
  general inspection 5
  jugular venous pressure 7–9
  palpation 9–10
  pulse 5–6
exercise
  in angina 53
  in aortic regurgitation 152
  beneficial effects 52–3
  cardiac rehabilitation 75
  and chest pain 47
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fallot’s tetralogy</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and hypertension</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventricular ectopics in</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise electrocardiography</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contraindications</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interpretation</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretest likelihood of disease</td>
<td>58, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stable angina</td>
<td>57–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stopping, reasons for</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise testing</td>
<td>115, 149, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with gas analysis</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise training</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facial signs</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fallot’s tetralogy</td>
<td>210, 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incidence</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fascicular block</td>
<td>120–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatty acid binding proteins as markers</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fibrates</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first-degree AV block</td>
<td>118, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flecainide</td>
<td>30, 129, 131, 133, 141, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forssmann, W</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Framingham risk tables</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frank–Starling curve</td>
<td>95, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedrich’s sign</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fungal infections</td>
<td>171, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furosemide (frusemide)</td>
<td>98, 103</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>genetic disorders</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gentamicin</td>
<td>175, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goswell, T</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acute coronary syndromes</td>
<td>69, 70, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angina</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HACEK organisms</td>
<td>170, 171, 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“hardening of arteries”</td>
<td>45, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see atrioventricular (AV) block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart failure</td>
<td>93–109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>background</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causes</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chronic</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diagnosis/assessment</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonpharmacological treatment</td>
<td>106–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharmacological treatment</td>
<td>100–1, 104–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examination/clinical history</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>history</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investigations</td>
<td>96–7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
management 102, 103
  acute heart failure 98
  chronic heart failure 100–1, 104–6
  future directions 106
  history 107
  by NYHA classification 106
  palliative care 108
pathophysiology 94–5
with pulmonary stenosis 209
symptoms, multiorgan 94
systolic vs diastolic 93
treatment 95
heart fatty-acid binding proteins 68
heart murmur
  asymptomatic 145–6
  grading 145
heart sounds 10–11
  added 11, 12, 13
  aortic regurgitation 150
  aortic stenosis 149
  associations in clinical examination 12, 13
  atrial septal defect 207
  cardiac tamponade 199
  congenital heart disease 203
  mitral regurgitation 154, 159
  mitral stenosis 154, 155
  mitral valve prolapse 161
  patent ductus arteriosus 210
  pericarditis 198
  physiological splitting 10
  pulmonary stenosis 209–10
  relative positions 11
  ventricular septal defect 204
heart “wiring” 112
Heberden, W 47
heparin 69, 70–1, 164
Herrick, JA 45
hibernating myocardium 62
high-density lipoprotein (HDL) 48, 49, 53, 55–57
history-taking 47, 78
Holter monitoring 114–15
homocystinuria 87, 191
Hopps, J 137
hydralazine
  heart failure 105, 106
  hypertension 85, 88
hydrochlorothiazide 87, 103
hyperaldosteronism 80
hyperkalemia 30, 31
hyperlipidemia 6, 55–6
hypertension 77–91
Index

assessment
  examination 79–80
  history-taking 78
  investigations 80–1, 89
background 77
basic science 90
blood pressure guidelines 77
causes 78, 79
definition 77–8
malignant/accelerated phase 90–1
management
  generalist 89
  lifestyle changes 81–2
  pharmacotherapy 82–7
  special populations 87–9
resistant 81, 90
symptoms 78
systolic vs diastolic 86–7
hypertensive retinopathy 81
hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) 181–6
  background 181–2
  echocardiography 42
  examinations 183
management
  medical 183–4
  nonsurgical septal reduction 184
  pacing 184
  surgery 184–5
mutations causing 181, 182
nonobstructive 186
pulse 7
  screening before sport 185–6

I
imidazoline type 1 receptor agonists 85, 86
infective endocarditis
  causative organisms 169–71, 175
  diagnostic classification 169, 170
  echocardiography 42, 174, 175
  investigations 173–4
  location 162
  and mitral regurgitation 159
  pathogenesis 172
  prognosis 176
  prophylaxis 176, 177–8, 207, 211
  prosthetic valves 172–3
  referral 173
  signs 6, 167
  symptoms 167–9
    constitutional 167
  eyes 168
neurological  168  
renal  168  
skin lesions  167  
treatment
  antibiotics  173, 174–5
  surgical  175–6
  and ventricular septal defect  204, 205
inflammation in atherosclerosis  72
inotropes  72, 94, 95
intra-aortic balloon pump
  counterpulsation  99
  insertion  99
  in mitral regurgitation  157
intracranial hemorrhage (ICH)  70
irregularly irregular pulse  7
isoproterenol (isoprenaline)  113
isotopes in CAD assessment  59, 60

J
Janeway lesions  6, 167, 170
Jenner, E  47
Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome  30, 130
“jet” lesions  159, 172
jugular veins  9
jugular venous pressure (JVP)  7–9
  abnormalities  9
  associations in clinical examination  12, 13
  positioning  8, 9
  waveforms  8

K
Kavanagh, T  74
Kussmaul, A  200
Kussmaul breathing  200
Kussmaul’s sign  199, 200

L
labetalol  88, 91, 193
lactate dehydrogenase  68, 69
Laennec  148
left anterior/posterior fascicular block  121
left bundle branch  112
left bundle branch block (LBBB)
  ECG  26, 27, 120
  hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  183
left ventricular hypertrophy
  ECG  26, 29
  with hypertension  80–1
  and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  181
left ventricular mass in HCM  183
lidocaine (lignocaine)
arrhythmia 141, 142
ventricular tachycardia 128
life-support algorithms for cardiac arrest
  advanced UK 2, 4
  advanced US 3, 4
  basic adult 1, 4
lifestyle changes
  acute coronary syndromes 74
  and hypertension 81–2
limb leads see under electrocardiography
Lincoln, A 190
lipid-lowering agents 55–7
lipid transport 55, 56
lipoproteins 55–56
loop diuretics 84
  heart failure 98, 103
low-density lipoprotein (LDL) 48, 49, 55–57, 72

M
M-mode imaging 36, 37
Mackenzie, J 134
macrophage foam cells 46, 72
magnesium
  in ventricular tachycardia 72, 128
  in pregnancy 88
magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) 62–3
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
  angina 62–3
  aortic dissection 192
  pacemakers 139
malar flush 6
malignant hypertension 90–1
malignant vasovagal syncope 116–17
  pacing 136
Marfan’s syndrome 5, 189, 190, 191
markers
  inflammation 72
  myocardial damage 68, 69
Maze procedure 134
methyldopa 85, 86, 88
metolazone 101, 103
metoprolol 101, 131
microbubbles 38–9
minoxidil 85
mitral regurgitation 157–60
  acute 157–8
  asymptomatic patients 159–60
  causes 154, 158, 160
  chronic 158–60
  common associations 12
  echocardiography 41
functional 160
natural history 159
in pregnancy 164
signs 154, 158, 159
therapy 160
mitral stenosis 152–7
and atrial fibrillation 156–7
causes 152, 154
common associations 12
echocardiography 41, 42, 155
ECG 155
left atrial dilatation 154
in pregnancy 164
signs 6, 153–4, 155
therapy 155
   medical 156
   surgical 155–6
mitral valve apparatus 153
mitral valves
   echocardiography 37
   prolapse 42, 161–2
   repair/replacement 156
vegetation 158, 172
Mobitz I (Wenckebach) AV block 118, 119
Mobitz II AV block 118, 119
   pacing 136
Morgagni, G 47
morphine 108
Morrow procedure 184
Müller’s sign 150
murmurs 11
   adult congenital heart disease 203
   aortic regurgitation 147, 149–150
   aortic stenosis 147
   associations in clinical examination 12, 13
   asymptomatic 145–146
   atrial septal defect 206, 207
   hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183
   infective endocarditis 167, 170
   mitral regurgitation 154, 157, 158, 159
   mitral stenosis 154, 155
   mitral valve prolapse 161
   patent ductus arteriosus 210
   in pregnancy 163
   preparticipation screening in sport 185
   pulmonary valve disease 163
   pulmonary valve stenosis 210
   tricuspid valve disease 162
   ventricular septal defect 204, 206
Mustard operation 211
mycotic aneurysms 168
myocardial fiber disarray 182
myocardial infarction (MI) 46
  in acute coronary syndromes 70
  acute, definition of 46
  anteroseptal 27
  ECG 25, 27
  thrombosis in 45
myoglobin 68, 69

N
natriuretic peptides 97
neutral endopeptidase inhibitors 106
nicorandil 55
nifedipine 152
nitrates
  acute coronary syndromes 69
  angina 54
  heart failure 98, 105, 106
nitric oxide 52
nitroprusside 91, 150, 157
nonspecific intraventricular conduction defect 122
nuclear cardiology 59–61

O
opiates 69, 108
orthopnea 95
Osler, W 171
Osler’s nodes 6, 167, 168, 170
ostium primum/secundum 205, 207
oxygen therapy 69

P
P waves 19, 22
  abnormalities 30
  atrial tachycardia 123
pacemaker syndrome 138
pacemakers 135–40
  AAI 136
  automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator (AICD) 139–40
  avoidance of magnetic fields 139
  codes 135–6, 137
  complications 138–9
  DDD 118, 121, 135–6, 138, 184
  DDI 114
  ECG 139
  first artificial 24
  history 137
  implantation 137–8
  indications, standard 136
  mode switching 138
  patient follow-up 139
permanent dual-chamber 114, 123
program alteration 138
rate-adaptive 136
single lead atrial 114
testing 137
VVI 136, 138

pacing
atrial fibrillation 136
atrial tachycardia 123
atrioventricular (AV) block 118, 135, 136
bifascicular block 121
bradycardia 114, 135, 136
external 113
hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 184
sinus node dysfunction 136
syncope 136
trifascicular block 121

palpation 9–10
papillary muscle dysfunction 157, 160
paraprosthetic regurgitation 42
Parry, C 47

patent ductus arteriosus 210, 211
common associations 13
incidence 204
pulse 7

patent foramen ovale 210
patient education in chronic heart failure 100–1
percutaneous techniques 63, 64–6
balloon aortic valvotomy 149
balloon mitral valvotomy 164
evidence base 67
valvotomy 155–6

percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) 63, 70
perfusion imaging 59–61
pericardial disease 197–201
cardiac tamponade 199–200
pericardial effusion 199
pericarditis 197–9
constrictive 200–1
pericardial effusion 199

pericarditis 197–9
causes 198
constrictive 200–1
ECG 29
examination 198
imaging 198
investigations 198
management 199
pathophysiology 197
presentations 198
pericardium 197
Index

petechiae 167
phenylalkylamine derivatives 84
physical activity see exercise
pipercillin 175
pitting edema 5
plaques, coronary
  formation 72
  range 45
  ruptured 45, 46
  stable 45, 46
  unstable 45, 46
pleural effusion 97
potassium blood levels 80, 97
potassium-channel openers 55
potassium-sparing diuretics 103, 104
PR interval 19
  abnormalities 30
prazosin 85, 87
pregnancy and hypertension 88
procainamide 141
propafenone 32, 129, 141
proptosis 6
prostacyclin 52
prosthetic valve endocarditis 173, 174
prothrombotic factors 45
pulmonary edema 95, 102
pulmonary embolism 30
pulmonary hypertension 13, 207
pulmonary regurgitation 12
pulmonary stenosis 13, 204, 209–10
pulmonary valve disease 163
pulses 5–7
  abnormal 7
    associations in clinical examination 12, 13
    peripheral 6
pulsus alternans 7
pulsus paradoxus 7, 200
Purkinje system 18

Q
Q waves 25, 26
QRS wave complex 19, 20, 22, 25
  abnormalities 27, 30, 31
    large/broad 27
    sinus wave 30, 33
    Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome 126
QT interval
  abnormalities 29, 30
    drug-induced 29, 30, 32
    torsade de pointes 129–30
Quincke’s sign 150
quinidine 141, 142

R
radioactive stents 64
radiofemoral delay 80
radiofrequency ablation
  atrial flutter 134
tachyarrhythmia 123, 125
  Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome 127
Rashkind’s procedure 211, 213
recanalization 71
referral
  acute coronary syndromes 73
  aortic stenosis 146
  coronary artery disease 57
  hypertension 89
regularly irregular pulse 7
renin–angiotensin system antagonists 85
resistant hypertension 81, 90
restrictive cardiomyopathy 187–8
Resuscitation Council (UK) 4
resuscitation, first electrical 24
retinopathy, hypertensive 80
revascularization 107
rheumatic heart disease 152, 162, 172
rifampicin 175
right bundle branch 112
right bundle branch block (RBBB)
  and congenital heart disease 203
  ECG 27, 30, 120
right ventricular hypertrophy 27
risk estimation of coronary artery disease 53
risk tables
  coronary artery disease 50–1, 53
  and hypertension 78
Romano–Ward syndrome 30, 130
Roth spots 168, 170

S
saphenous vein graft 66, 67
sawtooth P waves 23
scavenger receptors 72
second-degree AV block 118, 119
secondary hypertension 79
sick sinus syndrome see sinus node dysfunction
sildenafil 89
single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) 60
sinoatrial node (SAN) 18, 112
sinus node dysfunction (sick sinus syndrome) 113–14, 136, 141
sinus of Valsalva, aneurysm of 191
sinus tachycardia 123
Index

sinus venosus 206
smoking
  cessation 49, 82
  as risk factor 48, 49, 50–1
sodium levels
  heart failure 97
  hypertension 80
Sokolow–Lyon index 27
sotalol 30, 32, 129, 141, 142, 184
specialist nursing 108
spironolactone 83, 101, 102, 103, 104, 106
splinter hemorrhages 6, 167, 168
spondyloarthritis 5
ST segment 21
  abnormalities 27, 28–9
  diagnostic exercise tests 57–8
  elevation in acute coronary syndromes 70
  reverse tick depression 30
staphylococci 170, 171
Starflex occluder 207
statins 56, 57
stents 63, 65, 67
stethoscope, invention of 148
Stokes–Adams attacks 118
“strain” 26, 29, 30
streptococci 169, 170
streptokinase 70–1
stress echocardiography 61–2
stunned atria 133
stunned myocardium 62
“swinging heart” 199
sympathomimetics 85
syncope 114
  disturbances leading to 115
  electrophysiology 141
  evaluation 114–15, 116
  malignant vasovagal 116–17
  pacing 136
  patterns 116
syndrome X 48
systolic dysfunction 40

T
T waves 21
  abnormalities 26, 29, 30
  inversion 28
tachyarrhythmia 122–34
  atrial fibrillation 130–4
  atrial flutter 134
  atrial tachycardia 123, 124
  AV node re-entrant tachycardia (AVNRT) 124–5, 126
diagnosis 122, 124
ECG 122
sinus tachycardia 123
torsade de pointes 129–30
ventricular ectopics 129
ventricular pre-excitation 125–7
ventricular tachycardia 128–9
tachycardia–bradycardia syndrome see sinus node dysfunction

teeth 5
teicoplanin 175
thiazide diuretics
heart failure 103
hypertension 84, 86, 87, 88

third-degree AV block (complete heart block) 118, 119, 135, 136
three-vessel disease 66
thrombolysis 70
acute coronary syndromes 70–1
arrhythmia 72
complications 70
contraindications 71
recanalization after 71

thrombosis 45, 46
thyroid problems 80
ticlopidine 64
tilt-table testing 117
TIMI (Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction) 63, 64
tirofiban 64
tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) 70, 71
TNF-α antibodies 106
torsemide 103
torsades de pointes 32, 129–30
transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) 38, 174
transplantation 107–8
transposition of the great arteries 204, 210–11, 212
transthoracic two-dimensional echocardiography 174
Traube’s sign 150
triamterene 103
tricuspid valve disorders
Ebstein’s anomaly 162, 211, 213
regurgitation 12
stenosis 13
tricuspid valve replacement 162
trifascicular block 121
triglycerides 55
troponins 46, 64, 68, 69, 70, 181, 182
Twiddler’s syndrome 138
two-dimensional imaging 35, 36

U
ultrasound 35
see also echocardiography; stress echocardiography
V

vagolytics 117
Valsalva maneuver 124
valve assessment 41
valve disease 145–65
  aortic regurgitation 149–52
  aortic stenosis 146–9
  heart murmur 145–6
  mitral regurgitation 157–60
  mitral stenosis 152–7
  mitral valve prolapse 161–2
  in pregnancy 163–4
  pulmonary 163
  tricuspid 162–3
valve replacement
  aortic (AVR) 148, 149, 151, 193
  in endocarditis 176
  tricuspid 162
vancomycin 175, 178
vasoconstrictive factors 45
vasodilators 60, 85, 95, 105, 152, 164
Vaughan-Williams classification 141
vector diagram of QRS axis 23
vegetations
  infective endocarditis 172, 173, 204
  mitral valves 158, 159
ventricular assist devices 107–8
ventricular dysynchrony 107
ventricular ectopics (premature beats) 129
ventricular hypertrophy
  left 26, 29
  right 27
ventricular pre-excitation 125–7
ventricular septal defect 157, 172, 203–5
  characteristics 206
  common associations 13
  incidence 204
ventricular tachycardia 128–9
  chronic 129
  ECG 128
  polymorphic vs monomorphic 129
ventriculography 60, 61
verapamil
  angina 54
  aortic dissection 193
  arrhythmia 141
  hypertension 84, 86
  hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 183
  tachyarrhythmia 125
viral pericarditis 198
W
wall-motion abnormality 40–1
Waller, AD 18, 25
warfarin
  - acute coronary syndromes 73
  - angina 54
  - atrial fibrillation 131, 133
  - mitral valve prolapse 162
  - in pregnancy 164
waterhammer pulse 7, 149
weight reduction 75, 82
Welch, H 102
Wenckebach (Mobitz I) AV block 118, 119
Withering, W 107
Wolff–Parkinson–White (WPW) syndrome 125–6
  - ECG 127
  - electrophysiology 141
  - history 127

X
xanthomata 6

Z
Zyban 49